



# LAFF-On High-Performance Computing



Robert A. van de Geijn  
Devangi N. Parikh  
Jianyu Huang  
Margaret E. Myers

Copyright © 2017, 2018 by Robert A. van de Geijn, Devangi N. Parikh, Jianyu Huang, and Margaret E. Myers.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored, or transmitted in any manner without the written permission of the publisher. For information, contact any of the authors.

No warranties, express or implied, are made by the publisher, authors, and their employers that the programs contained in this volume are free of error. They should not be relied on as the sole basis to solve a problem whose incorrect solution could result in injury to person or property. If the programs are employed in such a manner, it is at the user's own risk and the publisher, authors, and their employers disclaim all liability for such misuse.

Trademarked names may be used in this book without the inclusion of a trademark symbol. These names are used in an editorial context only; no infringement of trademark is intended.

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data** not yet available

Draft Edition, Thursday 22<sup>nd</sup> February, 2018

This “Draft Edition” allows this material to be used while we sort out through what mechanism we will publish the book.

# Contents

<b>1. Matrix-Matrix Multiplication Basics</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1. Opening Remarks . . . . .	1
1.1.1. Launch . . . . .	1
1.1.2. Outline Week 1 . . . . .	6
1.1.3. What you will learn . . . . .	7
1.2. Mapping Matrices to Memory . . . . .	8
1.2.1. Column-major ordering . . . . .	8
1.2.2. The leading dimension . . . . .	9
1.2.3. A convention regarding the letter used for the loop index . . . . .	11
1.2.4. Ordering the loops . . . . .	11
1.3. Thinking in terms of vector-vector operations . . . . .	13
1.3.1. The Basic Linear Algebra Subprograms (BLAS) . . . . .	13
1.3.2. Notation . . . . .	13
1.3.3. The dot product (inner product) . . . . .	14
1.3.4. The IJP and JIP orderings . . . . .	16
1.3.5. The AXPY operation . . . . .	19
1.3.6. The IPJ and PIJ orderings . . . . .	21
1.3.7. The JPI and PJI orderings . . . . .	23
1.4. Thinking in terms of matrix-vector operations . . . . .	25
1.4.1. Matrix-vector multiplication via dot products or AXPYoperations . . . . .	25
1.4.2. Matrix-matrix multiplication via matrix-vector multiplications . . . . .	28
1.4.3. Rank-1 update RANK-1 . . . . .	30
1.4.4. Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates . . . . .	32
1.4.5. Matrix-matrix multiplication via row-times-matrix multiplications . . . . .	35
1.4.6. Discussion . . . . .	37
1.5. Enrichment . . . . .	39
1.5.1. Counting flops . . . . .	39
1.6. Wrapup . . . . .	40
1.6.1. Additional exercises . . . . .	40
1.6.2. Summary . . . . .	40

<b>2. Start Your Engines!</b>	<b>41</b>
2.1. Opener . . . . .	41
2.1.1. Launch . . . . .	41
2.1.2. Outline Week 2 . . . . .	42
2.1.3. What you will learn . . . . .	43
2.2. Using registers and vector instructions . . . . .	44
2.2.1. Blocked MMM . . . . .	44
2.2.2. Computing with matrices in registers . . . . .	46
2.2.3. Of vector registers, vector instructions, and instruction-level parallelism . . . . .	50
2.3. Optimizing the Microkernel . . . . .	55
2.3.1. Reuse of data in registers . . . . .	55
2.3.2. More options . . . . .	56
2.3.3. Amortizing data movement . . . . .	60
2.3.4. Discussion . . . . .	61
2.4. Around the Microkernel . . . . .	61
2.4.1. The memory hierarchy . . . . .	61
2.4.2. Maintaining performance beyond the L1 cache . . . . .	63
2.4.3. Blocking for multiple caches . . . . .	68
2.5. Further Optimizing the Micro-kernel . . . . .	70
2.5.1. Packing . . . . .	70
2.5.2. Further single core optimizations to try. . . . .	75
2.6. Multithreaded parallelization . . . . .	77
2.6.1. OpenMP . . . . .	77
2.6.2. Parallelizing the second loop around the micro-kernel . . . . .	77
2.6.3. Parallelizing the first loop around the micro-kernel . . . . .	79
2.6.4. Parallelizing the third loop around the micro-kernel . . . . .	80
2.6.5. Speedup, efficiency, and Ahmdahl's law . . . . .	82
2.6.6. Optimizing the packing . . . . .	84
2.6.7. Overlapping data movement with computation . . . . .	84
2.7. Enrichment . . . . .	85
2.8. Wrapup . . . . .	85
<b>3. Message-Passing Interface Basics</b>	<b>87</b>
3.1. Opener . . . . .	87
3.1.1. Launch . . . . .	87
3.1.2. Outline Week 3 . . . . .	88
3.1.3. What you will learn . . . . .	89
3.2. MPI Basics . . . . .	90
3.2.1. Programming distributed memory architectures . . . . .	90
3.2.2. MPI: Managing processes . . . . .	90
3.2.3. Sending and receiving . . . . .	93
3.2.4. Cost of sending/receiving a message . . . . .	96
3.3. Collective Communication . . . . .	97

3.3.1.	MPI_Bcast	97
3.3.2.	Minimum spanning tree broadcast (MST_Bcast)	98
3.3.3.	Can we do better yet?	102
3.3.4.	Various collective communications	102
3.4.	More Algorithms for Collective Communication	106
3.4.1.	Minimum Spanning Tree scatter and gather algorithms	106
3.4.2.	MST broadcast and reduce(-to-one)	110
3.4.3.	Bucket allgather and reduce-scatter	111
3.5.	A Calculus of Collective Communication	115
3.5.1.	The short vector case	115
3.5.2.	Leveraging ready-send for composed short-vector algorithms	116
3.5.3.	The long vector case	117
3.5.4.	Viewing the processes as a higher dimensional mesh	117
3.5.5.	From short vector to long vector	121
3.6.	Enrichment	122
3.7.	Wrapup	122
<b>4.</b>	<b>Distributed Memory Parallel Matrix-Vector Operations</b>	<b>125</b>
4.1.	Opener	125
4.1.1.	Launch	125
4.1.2.	Outline Week 4	126
4.1.3.	What you will learn	127
4.2.	Parallel Matrix-Vector Multiplication	128
4.2.1.	Notation	128
4.2.2.	A first parallel algorithm	129
4.2.3.	Speedup and efficiency	129
4.2.4.	Scalability	131
4.2.5.	A second parallel algorithm	132
4.2.6.	A weakly scalable algorithm	132
4.3.	Parallel Rank-1 Update	138
4.3.1.	Notation	138
4.3.2.	A weakly scalable algorithm	139
4.4.	Toward Parallel Matrix-Matrix Multiplication	142
4.4.1.	Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates, Part 1	142
4.4.2.	Of vectors, rows, and columns	143
4.4.3.	Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates, Part 2	145
4.4.4.	Matrix-matrix multiplication via matrix-vector multiplications	149
4.4.5.	High-Performance Parallel Matrix-Matrix Multiplication	150
4.5.	Enrichment	150
4.6.	Wrapup	150



# Preface



# **Acknowledgments**

The cover was derived from an image that is copyrighted by the Texas Advanced Computing Center (TACC). It is used with permission.



Week **1**

# Matrix-Matrix Multiplication Basics

## 1.1 Opening Remarks

### 1.1.1 Launch

**Homework 1.1.1.1** Compute

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 \\ -2 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 \\ -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} =$$

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

Let  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  be  $m \times k$ ,  $k \times n$ , and  $m \times n$  matrices, respectively. We can expose their individual entries as

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,k-1} \\ \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{1,k-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} & \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{m-1,k-1} \end{pmatrix}, B = \begin{pmatrix} \beta_{0,0} & \beta_{0,1} & \cdots & \beta_{0,n-1} \\ \beta_{1,0} & \beta_{1,1} & \cdots & \beta_{1,n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \beta_{k-1,0} & \beta_{k-1,1} & \cdots & \beta_{k-1,n-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

and

$$C = \begin{pmatrix} \gamma_{0,0} & \gamma_{0,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{0,n-1} \\ \gamma_{1,0} & \gamma_{1,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{1,n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \gamma_{m-1,0} & \gamma_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{m-1,n-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

The computation  $C := AB + C$  adds the result of matrix-matrix multiplication  $AB$  to a matrix  $C$  is

```

void Gemm_IJP( int m, int n, int k,
                double *A, int ldA,
                double *B, int ldB,
                double *C, int ldC )
{
    for ( int i=0; i<m; i++ )
        for ( int j=0; j<n; j++ )
            for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ )
                gamma( i,j ) += alpha( i,p ) * beta( p,j );
}

```

Assignments/Week1/C/Gemm\_IJP.c

Figure 1.1: C implementation of IJP ordering for computing MMM.

defined as

$$\gamma_{i,j} = \sum_{p=0}^{k-1} \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$$

for all  $0 \leq i < m$  and  $0 \leq j < n$ . This leads to the following pseudo-code for computing  $C := AB + C$ :

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
    for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
        for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
             $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
        end
    end
end

```

The outer two loops visit each element of  $C$ , and the inner loop updates  $\gamma_{i,j}$  with the dot product of the  $i$ th row of  $A$  with the  $j$ th column of  $B$ .

**Homework 1.1.1.2** In the file [Assignments/Week1/C/Gemm\\_IJP.c](#) you will find a simple implementation that computes  $C := AB + C$  (GEMM). Part of the code is given in Figure 1.1. Compile, link, and execute it by follow the instructions in the MATLAB Live Script [Plot\\_IJP mlx](#) in the same directory.

 SEE ANSWER

On Robert's laptop, Homework 1.1.1.2 yields the two graphs given in Figure 1.2 (top) as the curve labeled with IJP. In the first, the time required to compute GEMM as a function of the matrix size is plotted, where  $m = n = k$  (each matrix is square). The "dips" in the time required to complete can be attributed to a number of factors, including that other processes that are executing on the same processor may be disrupting the computation. One should not be too concerned about those. In the graph, we also show the time it takes to complete the same computations with a highly optimized implementation. To the uninitiated in high-performance computing (HPC), the

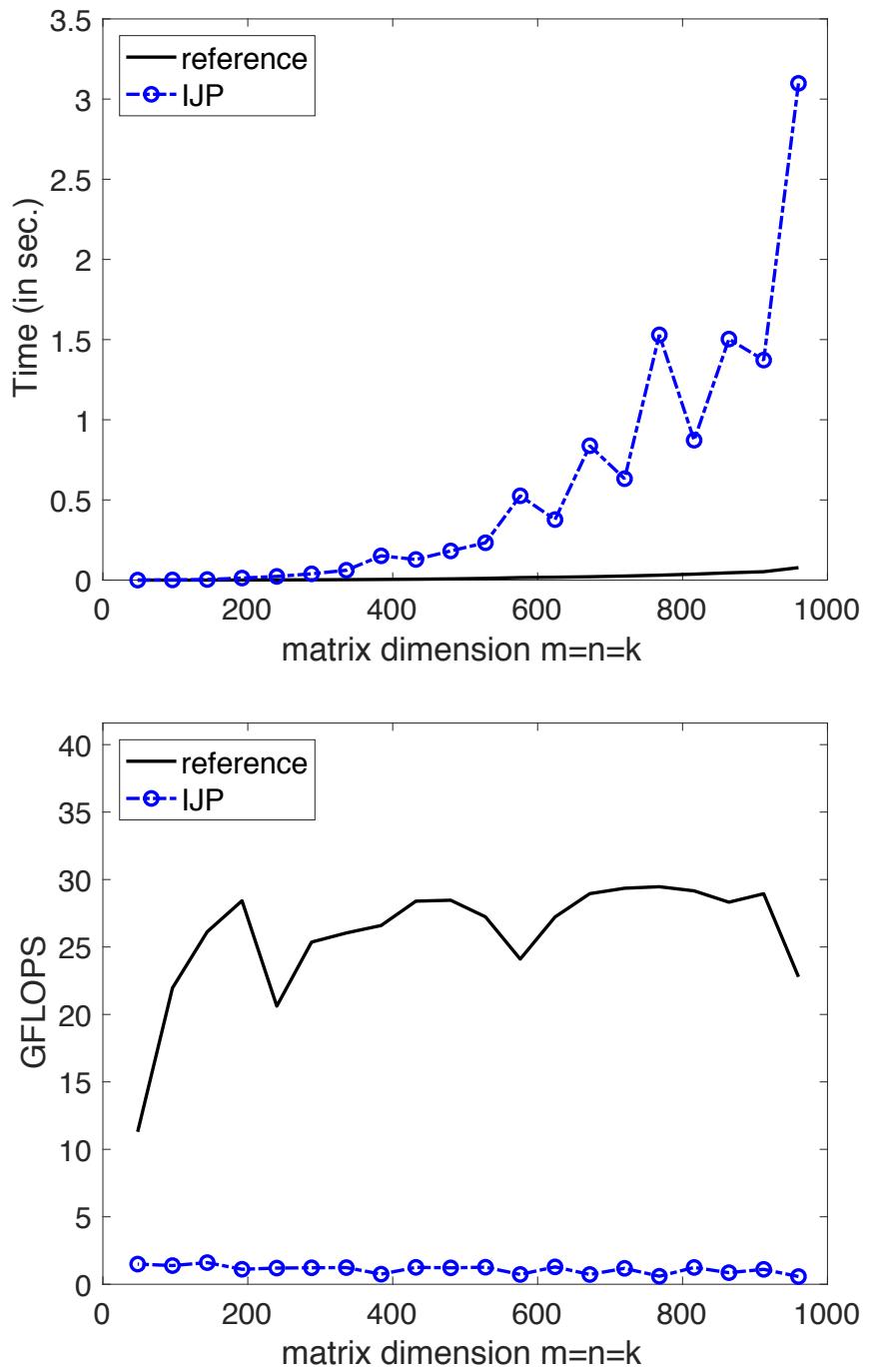


Figure 1.2: Performance comparison of a simple triple-nested loop and a high-performance implementation of matrix-matrix multiplication. Top: Time for computing  $C := AB + C$ . Bottom: Rate of computation, in billions of floating point operations per second (GFLOPS).

difference is the time required may be a bit of a shock. It makes one realize how inefficient many of the programs we write are.

The performance of a MMM implementation is measured in billions of floating point operations (flops) per second (GFLOPS). The idea is that we know that it takes  $2mnk$  flops to compute  $C := AB + C$  where  $C$  is  $m \times n$ ,  $A$  is  $m \times k$ , and  $B$  is  $k \times n$ . If we measure the time it takes to complete the computation,  $T(m, n, k)$  then the rate at which we compute is given by

$$\frac{2mnk}{T(m, n, k)} \times 10^{-9} \text{ GFLOPS.}$$

For our implementation and the reference implementation, this is reported in Figure 1.2 (Bottom). Again, don't worry too much about the dips in the curves. If we controlled the environment in which we performed the experiments, these would largely disappear.

Of course, we don't at this point even know if the reference implementation attains good performance. To investigate this, it pays to compute the theoretical peak performance of the processor.

- You will want to find out what exact processor is in your computer. On a Mac, you can type

```
sysctl -n machdep.cpu.brand_string
```

in a terminal session. On Robert's laptop, this yields

Intel(R) Core(TM) i5-4250U CPU @ 1.30GHz.

On a Linux system, you can instead type

```
lscpu
```

at the command line, which will give you much more detailed information.

- If you then do an internet search, you may find a page like

 Intel Core i5-4250U Processor

which tells Robert's laptop is a Haswell processor (look for the "Code name").

- Now this is where it gets interesting: On this page it tells you the Processor Base Frequency is 1.3 GHz, but that the Max Turbo Frequency is 2.60 GHz. The turbo frequency is the frequency at which the processor can operate under special circumstance. The more cores are active, the lower the frequency at which the processor operates to reduce the temperature and power use of the processor.
- You can find out more about what clock rate can be expected by consulting a document like

 Intel Xeon Processor E5 v3 Product Family.

This document may make your head spin...

You will want to investigate the above for the processor of the machine on which you perform your experiments.

For the sake of discussion, let's use the clock rate of 2.6 GHz in turbo for Robert's laptop.

- The next thing you need to know is how many flops each core can perform per clock cycle. We happen to know that a Haswell core can perform sixteen flops per cycle.
- Thus, the peak performance of a single core is given by  $2.6 \times 16 = 41.6$  GFLOPS when performing double precision real computations (which is what we will focus on in this course).

What we conclude is that the best we can expect, under idealized circumstances, is that our implementation will achieve 41.6 GFLOPS. Looking at Figure 1.2 (bottom), we see that the reference implementation achieves a reasonable rate of computation, while the simple triple loop is dismal in its performance. In that graph, and many that will follow, we make the top of the graph represent the theoretical peak.

---

## 1.1.2 Outline Week 1

<b>1.1. Opening Remarks</b>	1
1.1.1. Launch	1
1.1.2. Outline Week 1	6
1.1.3. What you will learn	7
<b>1.2. Mapping Matrices to Memory</b>	8
1.2.1. Column-major ordering	8
1.2.2. The leading dimension	9
1.2.3. A convention regarding the letter used for the loop index	11
1.2.4. Ordering the loops	11
<b>1.3. Thinking in terms of vector-vector operations</b>	13
1.3.1. The Basic Linear Algebra Subprograms (BLAS)	13
1.3.2. Notation	13
1.3.3. The dot product (inner product)	14
1.3.4. The IJP and JIP orderings	16
1.3.5. The AXPY operation	19
1.3.6. The IPJ and PIJ orderings	21
1.3.7. The JPI and PJI orderings	23
<b>1.4. Thinking in terms of matrix-vector operations</b>	25
1.4.1. Matrix-vector multiplication via dot products or AXPYoperations	25
1.4.2. Matrix-matrix multiplication via matrix-vector multiplications	28
1.4.3. Rank-1 update RANK-1	30
1.4.4. Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates	32
1.4.5. Matrix-matrix multiplication via row-times-matrix multiplications	35
1.4.6. Discussion	37
<b>1.5. Enrichment</b>	39
1.5.1. Counting flops	39
<b>1.6. Wrapup</b>	40
1.6.1. Additional exercises	40
1.6.2. Summary	40

### **1.1.3 What you will learn**

## 1.2 Mapping Matrices to Memory

In this section, learners find out

- How to map matrices to memory.
- Conventions we will use to describe how we index into the arrays that store matrices.
- That loop order affects performance.
- The performance of a simple implementation leaves a lot to be desired.
- High-performance can be achieved.

The learner is left wondering “why?”

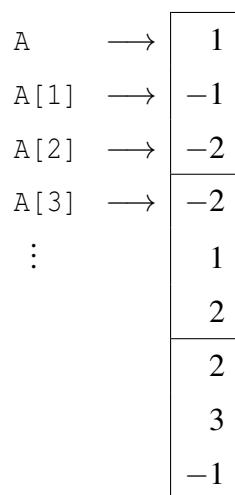
### 1.2.1 Column-major ordering

Matrices are stored in two-dimensional arrays while computer memory is inherently one-dimensional in the way it is addressed. So, we need to agree on how we are going to store matrices in memory.

Consider the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 \\ -2 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

from the opener of this week. In memory, this may be stored in an array A by columns:



which is known as *column-major ordering*.

---

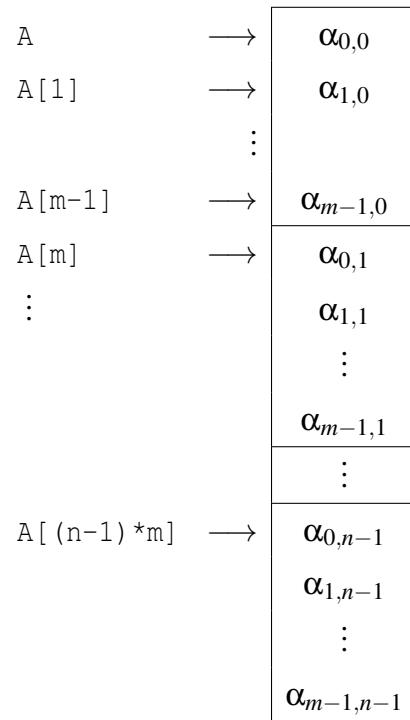


Figure 1.3: Mapping of  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  to memory with column-major order.

More generally, consider the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,k-1} \\ \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{1,k-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} & \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{m-1,k-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Column-major ordering would store this in array  $\mathbb{A}$  as illustrated in Figure 1.3. Obviously, one could use the alternative known as *row-major ordering*.

## 1.2.2 The leading dimension

Very frequently, we will work with a matrix that is a submatrix of a larger matrix. Consider Figure 1.4. What we depict there is a matrix that is embedded in a larger matrix. The larger matrix consists of  $\text{ldA}$  (the *leading dimension*) rows and some number of columns. If column-major order is used to store the larger matrix, then addressing the elements in the submatrix requires knowledge of the leading dimension of the larger matrix. In the C programming language, if the top-left element of the submatrix is stored at address  $\mathbb{A}$ , then one can address the  $(i, j)$  element as  $\mathbb{A}[j * \text{ldA} + i]$ . We will typically define a macro that makes addressing the elements more natural:

	A	→	1		alpha(0, 0)	→	1
	A[1]	→	4		alpha(1, 0)	→	4
	A[2]	→	7		alpha(2, 0)	→	7
	A[3]	→	10		alpha(3, 0)	→	10
		×				×	
		⋮				⋮	
		×				×	
ldA	A[ldA]	→	2		alpha(0, 1)	→	2
	A[ldA+1]	→	5		alpha(1, 1)	→	5
	A[ldA+2]	→	8		alpha(2, 1)	→	8
	A[ldA+3]	→	11		alpha(3, 1)	→	11
		×				×	
		⋮				⋮	
		×				×	
	A[2*ldA]	→	3		alpha(0, 2)	→	3
	A[2*ldA+1]	→	6		alpha(1, 2)	→	6
	A[2*ldA+2]	→	9		alpha(2, 2)	→	9
	A[2*ldA+3]	→	12		alpha(3, 2)	→	12
		×				×	
		⋮				⋮	
		×				×	
		×				×	
		×				×	
		×				×	
		⋮				⋮	
		×				×	

Figure 1.4: Addressing a matrix embedded in an array with ldA rows. At the left we illustrate a  $4 \times 3$  submatrix of a  $ldA \times 4$  matrix. In the middle, we illustrate how this is mapped into an linear array a. In the right, we show how defining the C macro `#define alpha(i, j) A[ (j)*ldA + (i) ]` allows us to address the matrix in a more natural way.

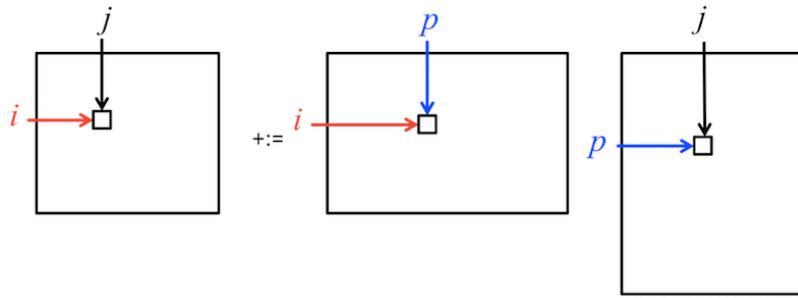


Figure 1.5: We embrace the convention that in loops that implement MMM, the variable  $i$  indexes the current row of matrix  $C$  (and hence the current row of  $A$ ), the variable  $j$  indexes the current column of matrix  $C$  (and hence the current column of  $B$ ), and variable  $p$  indexes the “other” dimension, namely the current column of  $A$  (and hence the current row of  $B$ ). In other literature, the index  $k$  is often used instead of the index  $p$ . However, it is customary to talk about  $m \times n$  matrix  $C$ ,  $m \times k$  matrix  $A$ , and  $k \times n$  matrix  $B$ . Thus, the letter  $k$  is “overloaded” and we use  $p$  instead.

```
#define alpha(i, j) A[ (j)*ldA + (i) ]
```

where we assume that the variable or constant  $ldA$  holds the leading dimension parameter.

### 1.2.3 A convention regarding the letter used for the loop index

When we talk about loops for matrix-matrix multiplication (MMM), it helps to keep the picture in Figure 1.5 in mind, which illustrates which loop index (variable name) is used for what row or column of the matrices. We try to be consistent in this use, as should you.

### 1.2.4 Ordering the loops

Consider again a simple algorithm for computing  $C := AB + C$ .

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
    for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p}\beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end
```

Given that we now embrace the convention that  $i$  indexes rows of  $C$  and  $A$ ,  $j$  indexes columns of  $C$  and  $B$ , and  $p$  indexes “the other dimension,” we can call this the IJP ordering of the loops around the assignment statement.

The order in which the elements of  $C$  are updated, and the order in which terms of

$$\alpha_{i,0}\beta_{0,j} + \cdots + \alpha_{i,k-1}\beta_{k-1,j}$$

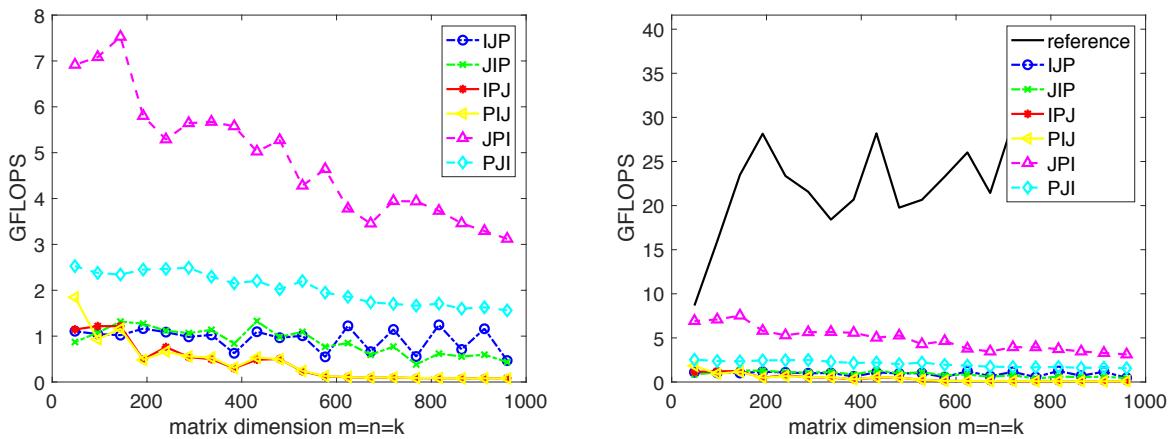


Figure 1.6: Performance comparison of all different orderings of the loops, on Robert’s laptop. In the graph on the right, the performance of the reference implementation is added and the top of the graph is chosen to represent the theoretical peak of the processor. This captures that simple implementations aren’t magically transformed into high-performance implementations by compilers or architectural features. The most pronounced “zigzagging” of the reference plot is likely due to other tasks being run on the same processor.

are added to  $c_{i,j}$  is mathematically equivalent. (There would be a possible change in the result due to round-off errors when floating point arithmetic occurs, but this is ignored.) What this means is that the three loops can be reordered without changing the result.

**Homework 1.2.4.1** The IJP ordering is one possible ordering of the loops. How many distinct reorderings of those loops are there?

SEE ANSWER

**Homework 1.2.4.2** In directory `Assignments/Week1/C/` make copies of `Gemm_IJP.c` into files with names that reflect the different loop orderings (`Gemm_JIP.c`, etc.). Next, make the necessary changes to loops in each file to reflect the ordering encoded in its name. Test the implementations by executing ‘make JIP’, etc., for each of the implementations and view the resulting performance by make the indicated changes to the Live Script in `Plot_All_Orderings`.

SEE ANSWER

In Figure 1.6, the results of Homework 1.2.4.2 on Robert’s laptop are reported. What is obvious is that ordering the loops matters. Changing the order changes how data in memory (and caches) are accessed, and that can have a considerable impact on the performance that is achieved. The bottom graph includes a plot of the performance of the reference implementation and scales the y-axis so that the top of the graph represents the theoretical peak of a single core of the processor. What it demonstrates is that there is a lot of room for improvement.

## 1.3 Thinking in terms of vector-vector operations

In this section, learners find out

- Our notational conventions for matrices and vectors.
- How to think of a matrix in terms of its rows or columns.
- How the inner-most loop of MMM expresses one of two vector-vector operations: the dot product (dot) or the update of a vector with a multiple of another vector (AXPY).
- How MMM can be expressed in terms of dot product and axpy vector-vector operations.
- That vector-vector operations attained high performance on the vector supercomputers of the 1970s. In Week 2, we will see how similarly modern cores attain high performance with vector instructions.
- How to implement vector-vector operations with calls to the Basic
  - blah blah blah
  - understand memory access patterns
  - Link to high-performance implementations of vector-vector operations.

### 1.3.1 The Basic Linear Algebra Subprograms (BLAS)

Linear algebra operations are fundamental to computational science. In the 1970s, when vector supercomputers reigned supreme, it was recognized that if applications and software libraries are written in terms of a standardized interface to routines that implement operations with vectors, and vendors of computers then provide high-performance instantiations for that interface, then applications would attain portable high-performance across different computer platforms. This observation yielded the original Basic Linear Algebra Subprograms (BLAS) interface [?] for Fortran 77. These original BLAS are now referred to as the *level-1 BLAS* because the interface was expanded in the 1980 to encompass matrix-vector operations (level-2 BLAS) and matrix-matrix operations (level-3 BLAS). We will learn more about the level-2 and level-3 BLAS later in the course.

Expressing code in terms of the BLAS has another benefit: the call to the routine hides the loop that otherwise implements the vector-vector operation and clearly reveals the operation being performed, thus improving readability of the code.

### 1.3.2 Notation

In our discussions, we use capital letters for matrices ( $A, B, C, \dots$ ), lower case letters for vectors ( $a, b, c, \dots$ ), and lower case Greek letters for scalars ( $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \dots$ ). Exceptions are integer scalars, for which we will use  $i, j, k, m, n$ , and  $p$ .

Vectors in our universe are column vectors or, equivalently,  $n \times 1$  matrices if the vector has  $n$  elements. A row vector we view as a column vector that has been transposed. So,  $x$  is a column vector and  $x^T$  is a row vector.

In the subsequent discussion, we will want to expose the rows or columns of a matrix. If  $X$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix, then we expose its columns as

$$X = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} x_0 & x_1 & \cdots & x_{n-1} \end{array} \right)$$

so that  $x_j$  equals the column with index  $j$ . We expose its rows as

$$X = \left( \begin{array}{c} \tilde{x}_0^T \\ \tilde{x}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{x}_{m-1}^T \end{array} \right)$$

so that  $\tilde{x}_i^T$  equals the row with index  $i$ . Here the  $T$  indicates it is a row (a column vector that has been transposed). The tilde is added for clarity since  $x_i^T$  would in this setting equal the column indexed with  $i$  that has been transposed, rather than the row indexed with  $i$ . When there isn't a cause for confusion, we will sometimes leave the  $\sim$  off. We use the lower case letter that corresponds to the upper case letter used to denote the matrix, as an added visual clue that  $x_j$  is a column of  $X$  and  $\tilde{x}_i^T$  is a row of  $X$ .

We have already seen that the scalars that constitute the elements of a matrix or vector are denoted with the lower Greek letter that corresponds to the letter used for the matrix of vector:

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} \chi_{0,0} & \chi_{0,1} & \cdots & \chi_{0,n-1} \\ \chi_{1,0} & \chi_{1,1} & \cdots & \chi_{1,n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \chi_{m-1,0} & \chi_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \chi_{m-1,n-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad x = \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

If you look carefully, you will notice the difference between  $x$  and  $\chi$ . The latter is the lower case Greek letter "chi."

### 1.3.3 The dot product (inner product)

Given two vectors  $x$  and  $y$  of size  $n$  with elements

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad y = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_0 \\ \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

their dot product is given by

$$x^T y = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \chi_i \psi_i.$$

The notation  $x^T y$  comes from the fact that the dot product equals the result of multiplying  $1 \times n$  matrix  $x^T$  times  $n \times 1$  matrix  $y$ .

A routine that computes  $x^T y + \gamma$  where  $x$  and  $y$  are stored at location  $x$  with stride `incx` and location  $y$  with stride `incy`, respectively, and  $\gamma$  is stored at location `gamma` is given by

```
#define chi( i ) x[ (i)*incx ] // map chi( i ) to array x
#define psi( i ) y[ (i)*incy ] // map psi( i ) to array y

void Dots( int n, double *x, int incx, double *y, int incy, double *gamma )
{
    for ( int i=0; i<n; i++ )
        *gamma += chi( i ) * psi( i );
}
```

Assignments/Week1/C/Dots.c

in [Dots.c](#).

The BLAS include a function for computing the dot operation. Its calling sequence in Fortran, for double precision data, is

`DDOT( N, X, INCX, Y, INCY )`

where

- (input) `N` is an integer that equals the size of the vectors.
- (input) `X` is the address where  $x$  is stored.
- (input) `INCX` is the stride in memory between entries of  $x$ .
- (input) `Y` is the address where  $y$  is stored.
- (input) `INCY` is the stride in memory between entries of  $y$ .

The function returns the result as a scalar of type double precision. If the datatype were single precision, complex double precision, or complex single precision, then the first `D` is replaced by `S`, `Z`, or `C`, respectively.

To call the same routine in a code written in C, it is important to keep in mind that Fortran passes data by address. The call

`Dots( n, x, incx, y, incy, &gamma );`

which, recall, adds the result of the dot product to the value in `gamma`, translates to

`gamma += ddot_( &n, x, &incx, y, &incy );`

When one of the strides equals one, as in

```
Dots( n, x, 1, y, incy, &gamma );
```

one has to declare an integer variable (e.g, `i_one`) with value one and pass the address of that variable:

```
int i_one=1;
gamma += ddot_( &n, x, &i_one, y, &incy );
```

We will see examples of this later in this section.

In this course, we use the BLIS implementation of the BLAS as our library. This library also has its own (native) BLAS-like interface. A “quickguide” for this BLIS native interface can be found at

<https://github.com/flame/blis/wiki/BLISAPIQuickReference>.

There, we find the routine `bli_ddotxv` that computes  $\gamma := \alpha x^T y + \beta \gamma$ , optionally conjugating the elements of the vectors. The call

```
Dots( n, x, incx, y, incy, &gamma );
```

translates to

```
double one=1.0;

bli_ddotxv( BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE,
             n, &one, x, incx, y, incy,
             &one, &gamma, NULL );
```

The `BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE` is to indicate that the vectors are *not* to be conjugated. Those parameters are there for consistency with the complex versions of this routine (`bli_zdotv` and `bli_cdotsv`). The, `NULL` at the end corresponds to a parameters that experts can use to pass certain environment information to the routine. For our purposes, passing the `NULL` pointer suffices.

### 1.3.4 The IJP and JIP orderings

Let us return once again to the IJP ordering of the loops that compute MMM:

```
for i := 0, ..., m - 1
    for j := 0, ..., n - 1
        for p := 0, ..., k - 1
             $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p}\beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
        end
    end
end
```

This pseudo-code translates into the routine coded in C given in Figure 1.1.

Using the notation that we introduced in Unit 1.3.2, one way to think of the above algorithm is to view matrix  $C$  as its individual elements, matrix  $A$  as its rows, and matrix  $B$  as its columns:

$$C = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \gamma_{0,0} & \gamma_{0,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{0,n-1} \\ \hline \gamma_{1,0} & \gamma_{1,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{1,n-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline \gamma_{m-1,0} & \gamma_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{m-1,n-1} \end{array} \right), \quad A = \left( \begin{array}{c} \tilde{a}_0^T \\ \hline \tilde{a}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \hline \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T \end{array} \right), \quad \text{and } B = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} b_0 & b_1 & \cdots & b_{n-1} \end{array} \right).$$

We then notice that

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \gamma_{0,0} & \gamma_{0,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{0,n-1} \\ \hline \gamma_{1,0} & \gamma_{1,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{1,n-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline \gamma_{m-1,0} & \gamma_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{m-1,n-1} \end{array} \right) \\ & := \left( \begin{array}{c} \tilde{a}_0^T \\ \hline \tilde{a}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \hline \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} b_0 & b_1 & \cdots & b_{n-1} \end{array} \right) + \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \gamma_{0,0} & \gamma_{0,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{0,n-1} \\ \hline \gamma_{1,0} & \gamma_{1,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{1,n-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline \gamma_{m-1,0} & \gamma_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \gamma_{m-1,n-1} \end{array} \right) \\ & = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \tilde{a}_0^T b_0 + \gamma_{0,0} & \tilde{a}_0^T b_1 + \gamma_{0,1} & \cdots & \tilde{a}_0^T b_{n-1} + \gamma_{0,n-1} \\ \hline \tilde{a}_1^T b_0 + \gamma_{1,0} & \tilde{a}_1^T b_1 + \gamma_{1,1} & \cdots & \tilde{a}_1^T b_{n-1} + \gamma_{1,n-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T b_0 + \gamma_{m-1,0} & \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T b_1 + \gamma_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T b_{n-1} + \gamma_{m-1,n-1} \end{array} \right). \end{aligned}$$

If this makes your head spin, you may want to quickly go through Weeks 3-5 of our MOOC titled “[Linear Algebra: Foundations to Frontiers](#). It captures that the outer two loops visit all of the elements in  $C$ , and the inner loop implements the dot product of the appropriate row of  $A$  with the appropriate column of  $B$ :  $\gamma_{i,j} := \tilde{a}_i^T b_j + \gamma_{i,j}$ , as illustrated by

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, m-1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, n-1$ 
    for  $p := 0, \dots, k-1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

which is, again, the IJP ordering of the loops.

**Homework 1.3.4.1** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_IJP.c into file Gemm\_IJ\_Dots.c. Change Gemm\_IJP to Gemm\_IJ\_Dots in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to Dots. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_IJP\\_JIP mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 1.3.4.2** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_IJP.c into file Gemm\_IJ\_ddot.c. Change Gemm\_IJP to Gemm\_IJ\_ddot in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to the BLAS routine ddot. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_IJP\\_JIP mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 1.3.4.3** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_IJP.c into file Gemm\_IJ\_bli\_ddotxv.c. Change Gemm\_IJP to Gemm\_IJ\_bli\_ddotxv in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to the BLIS routine bli\_ddotxv. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_IJP\\_JIP mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

Obviously, one can equally well switch the order of the outer two loops, which just means that the elements of  $C$  are computed a column at a time rather than a row at a time:

```

for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
  for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
    for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p}\beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

**Homework 1.3.4.4** Repeat the last exercises with the implementation in Gemm\_JIP.c.

[SEE ANSWER](#)

In Figure 1.7 we report the performance of the various implementations from the last homeworks. What we notice is that, at least when using Apple's clang compiler, not much difference results from hiding the inner-most loop in a subroutine.

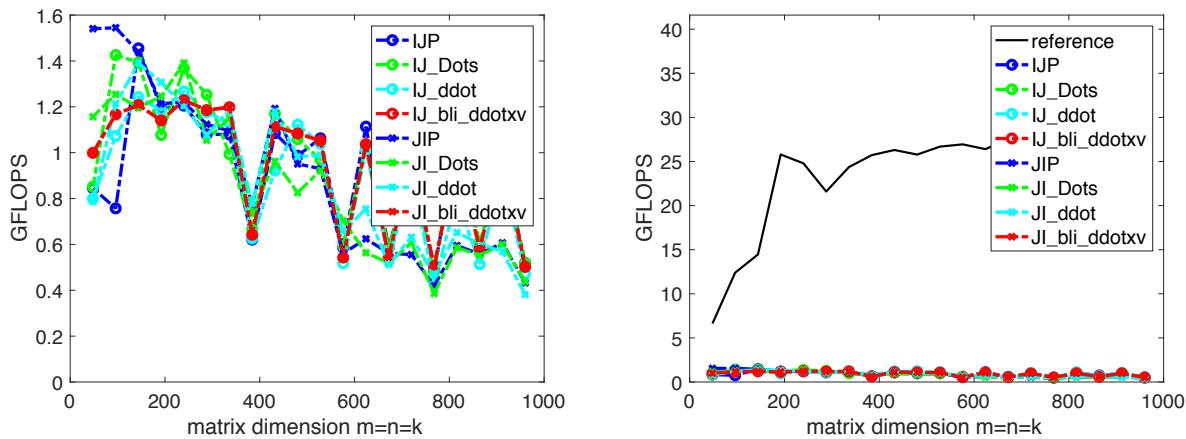


Figure 1.7: Performance of the various implementations of the IJP and JIP orderings. In the graph on the right, we include the reference.

### 1.3.5 The AXPY operation

Given a scalar,  $\alpha$ , and two vectors,  $x$  and  $y$ , of size  $n$  with elements

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad y = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_0 \\ \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

the scaled vector addition (AXPY) operation is given by

$$y := \alpha x + y$$

which in terms of the elements of the vectors equals

$$\begin{pmatrix} \psi_0 \\ \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} := \alpha \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \psi_0 \\ \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha\chi_0 + \psi_0 \\ \alpha\chi_1 + \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha\chi_{n-1} + \psi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

The name `axpy` comes from the fact that in Fortran 77 only six characters and numbers could be used to designate the names of variables and functions. The operation  $\alpha x + y$  can be read out loud as “scalar A times x plus y” which yields the acronym AXPY.

An outline for a routine that implements the AXPY operation is given by

```
#define chi( i ) x[ (i)*incx ] // map chi( i ) to array x
#define psi( i ) y[ (i)*incy ] // map psi( i ) to array y

void Axpy( int n, double alpha, double *x, int incx, double *y, int incy )
{
    int i;

    for ( i=0; i<n; i++ )
        psi( i ) =
            ;
}
```

Assignments/Week1/C/Axpy.c

in file [Axpy.c](#).

**Homework 1.3.5.1** Complete the routine in `Axpy.c`. You can find the partial implementation in [Axpy.c](#). You will test the implementation by using it in subsequent homeworks.

[SEE ANSWER](#)

The BLAS include a function for computing the AXPY operation. Its calling sequence in Fortran, for double precision data, is

`DAXPY( N, ALPHA, X, INCX, Y, INCY )`

where

- (input) `N` is the address of the integer that equals the size of the vectors.
- (input) `ALPHA` is the address where  $\alpha$  is stored.
- (input) `X` is the address where  $x$  is stored.
- (input) `INCX` is the address where the stride between entries of  $x$  is stored.
- (input/output) `Y` is the address where  $y$  is stored.
- (input) `INCY` is the address where the stride between entries of  $y$  is stored.

(It may appear strange that the addresses of `N`, `ALPHA`, `INCX`, and `INCY` are passed in. This is because Fortran passes parameters by address rather than value.) If the datatype were single precision, complex double precision, or complex single precision, then the first `D` is replaced by `S`, `Z`, or `C`, respectively.

The call

`Axpy( n, alpha, x, incx, y, incy );`

translates to

`daxpy_( &n, &alpha, x, &incx, y, &incy );`

We will see examples of its use later in this section.

The BLIS native routine for AXPY is `bli_dapyv`. The call

```
Axpy( n, alpha, x, incx, y, incy );
```

translates to

```
bli_daxpyv( BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, n, alpha, x, incx, y, incy, NULL );
```

The `BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE` is to indicate that vector  $x$  is *not* to be conjugated. That parameter is there for consistency with the complex versions of this routine (`bli_zaxpyv` and `bli_caxpyv`). The, `NULL` at the end corresponds to a parameters that experts can use to pass certain environment information to the routine. For our purposes, passing the `NULL` pointer suffices.

### 1.3.6 The IPJ and PIJ orderings

What we notice is that there are  $3!$  ways of order the loops: Three choices for the outer loop, two for the second loop, and one choice for the final loop. Let's consider the IPJ ordering:

```
for i := 0, ..., m - 1
  for p := 0, ..., k - 1
    for j := 0, ..., n - 1
      γi,j := αi,pβp,j + γi,j
    end
  end
end
```

One way to think of the above algorithm is to view matrix  $C$  as its rows, matrix  $A$  as its individual elements, and matrix  $B$  as its rows:

$$C = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix}, \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,k-1} \\ \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{1,k-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} & \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{m-1,k-1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{b}_0^T \\ \tilde{b}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{b}_{k-1}^T \end{pmatrix}.$$

We then notice that

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,k-1} \\ \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{1,k-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} & \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{m-1,k-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{b}_0^T \\ \tilde{b}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{b}_{k-1}^T \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T + \alpha_{0,0}\hat{b}_0^T + \alpha_{0,1}\hat{b}_1^T + \cdots + \alpha_{0,k-1}\hat{b}_{k-1}^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T + \alpha_{1,0}\hat{b}_0^T + \alpha_{1,1}\hat{b}_1^T + \cdots + \alpha_{1,k-1}\hat{b}_{k-1}^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T + \alpha_{m-1,0}\hat{b}_0^T + \alpha_{m-1,1}\hat{b}_1^T + \cdots + \alpha_{m-1,k-1}\hat{b}_{k-1}^T \end{pmatrix}.$$

This captures that the outer two loops visit all of the elements in  $A$ , and the inner loop implements the updating of the  $i$ th row of  $C$  by adding  $\alpha_{i,p}$  times the  $p$ th row of  $B$  to it, as captured by

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
  for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
    for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p}\beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end
```

**Homework 1.3.6.1** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_IPJ.c into file Gemm\_IP\_Axpy.c. Change Gemm\_IPJ to Gemm\_IP\_Axpy in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to Axpy. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_IPJ\\_PIJ.mlx](#).

☞ SEE ANSWER

**Homework 1.3.6.2** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_IPJ.c into file Gemm\_IP\_daxpy.c. Change Gemm\_IPJ to Gemm\_IP\_daxpy in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to the BLAS routine daxpy. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_IPJ\\_PIJ.mlx](#).

☞ SEE ANSWER

**Homework 1.3.6.3** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_IPJ.c into file Gemm\_IP\_daxpyv.c. Change Gemm\_IPJ to Gemm\_IP\_daxpyv in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to the BLIS routine daxpyv. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_IPJ\\_PIJ.mlx](#).

☞ SEE ANSWER

One can switch the order of the outer two loops to get

```

for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
  for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
    for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

The outer loop in this second algorithm fixes the row of  $B$  that is used to update all rows of  $C$ , using the appropriate element from  $A$  to scale. In the first iteration of the outer loop ( $p = 0$ ), the following computations occur:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T + \alpha_{0,0} \hat{b}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T + \alpha_{1,0} \hat{b}_0^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T + \alpha_{m-1,0} \hat{b}_0^T \end{pmatrix}.$$

In the second iteration of the outer loop ( $p = 1$ ) it computes

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T + \alpha_{0,0} \hat{b}_0^T + \alpha_{0,1} \hat{b}_1^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T + \alpha_{1,0} \hat{b}_0^T + \alpha_{1,1} \hat{b}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T + \alpha_{m-1,0} \hat{b}_0^T + \alpha_{m-1,1} \hat{b}_1^T \end{pmatrix},$$

and so forth.

**Homework 1.3.6.4** Repeat the last exercises with the implementation in `Gemm_PIJ.c`.

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

### 1.3.7 The JPI and PJI orderings

Let us consider the JPI ordering:

```

for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
  for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
    for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

One way to think of the above algorithm is to view matrix  $C$  as its columns, matrix  $A$  as its columns, and matrix  $B$  as its individual elements. Then

$$\begin{pmatrix} c_0 & | & c_1 & | & \cdots & | & c_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} := \\ \left( a_0 \mid a_1 \mid \cdots \mid a_{k-1} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \beta_{0,0} & | & \beta_{0,1} & | & \cdots & | & \beta_{0,n-1} \\ \hline \beta_{1,0} & | & \beta_{1,1} & | & \cdots & | & \beta_{1,n-1} \\ \vdots & | & \vdots & | & & | & \vdots \\ \hline \beta_{k-1,0} & | & \beta_{k-1,1} & | & \cdots & | & \beta_{k-1,n-1} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} c_0 & | & c_1 & | & \cdots & | & c_{n-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

so that

$$\begin{pmatrix} c_0 & | & c_1 & | & \cdots & | & c_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} := \\ \left( c_0 + \beta_{0,0}a_0 + \beta_{1,0}a_1 + \cdots \mid c_1 + \beta_{0,1}a_0 + \beta_{1,1}a_1 + \cdots \mid \cdots \mid c_{n-1} + \beta_{0,n-1}a_0 + \beta_{1,n-1}a_1 + \cdots \right).$$

The algorithm captures this as

```

for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
  for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
    for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p}\beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
   $c_j := \beta_{p,j}a_p + c_j$ 
end
```

**Homework 1.3.7.1** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_JPI.c into file Gemm\_JP\_Axpy.c. Change Gemm\_JPI to Gemm\_JP\_Axpy in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to Axpy. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_Inner\\_I.mlx](#).

☞ SEE ANSWER

**Homework 1.3.7.2** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_JPI.c into file Gemm\_JP\_daxpy.c. Change Gemm\_JPI to Gemm\_JP\_daxpy in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to the BLAS routine daxpy. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_Inner\\_I.mlx](#).

☞ SEE ANSWER

**Homework 1.3.7.3** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ copy file Gemm\_JPI.c into file Gemm\_JP\_daxpyv.c. Change Gemm\_JPI to Gemm\_JP\_daxpyv in all places in this new file and then replace the inner-most loop with a call to the BLIS routine daxpyv. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [data/Plot\\_Inner\\_I.mlx](#).

☞ SEE ANSWER

One can switch the order of the outer two loops to get

```

for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
    for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p}\beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

The outer loop in this algorithm fixes the column of  $A$  that is used to update all columns of  $C$ , using the appropriate element from  $B$  to scale. In the first iteration of the outer loop, the following computations occur:

$$\left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} c_0 & c_1 & \cdots & c_{n-1} \\ \hline c_0 + \beta_{0,0}a_0 & | & c_1 + \beta_{0,1}a_0 & | \cdots | c_{n-1} + \beta_{0,n-1}a_0 \end{array} \right).$$

In the second iteration of the outer loop it computes

$$\left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} c_0 & c_1 & \cdots & c_{n-1} \\ \hline c_0 + \beta_{0,0}a_0 + \beta_{1,0}a_1 & | & c_1 + \beta_{0,1}a_0 + \beta_{1,1}a_1 & | \cdots | c_{n-1} + \beta_{0,n-1}a_0 + \beta_{1,n-1}a_1 \end{array} \right).$$

and so forth.

**Homework 1.3.7.4** Repeat the last exercises with the implementation in `Gemm_PJI.c`.

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

## 1.4 Thinking in terms of matrix-vector operations

### 1.4.1 Matrix-vector multiplication via dot products or AXPY operations

Consider the matrix-vector multiplication (MVM)

$$y := Ax + y.$$

The way one is usually taught to compute this operations is that each element of  $y$ ,  $\psi_i$ , is updated with the dot product of the corresponding row of  $A$ ,  $\tilde{a}_i^T$ , with vector  $x$ . With our notation, we can

describe this as

$$\begin{pmatrix} \Psi_0 \\ \Psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \Psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{a}_0^T \\ \tilde{a}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} x + \begin{pmatrix} \Psi_0 \\ \Psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \Psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{a}_0^T x + \Psi_0 \\ \tilde{a}_1^T x + \Psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T x + \Psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

If we then expose the individual elements of  $A$  and  $y$  we get

$$\begin{pmatrix} \Psi_0 \\ \Psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \Psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} \chi_0 + \alpha_{0,1} \chi_1 + \cdots \alpha_{0,n-1} \chi_{n-1} + \Psi_0 \\ \alpha_{1,0} \chi_0 + \alpha_{1,1} \chi_1 + \cdots \alpha_{1,n-1} \chi_{n-1} + \Psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} \chi_0 + \alpha_{m-1,1} \chi_1 + \cdots \alpha_{m-1,n-1} \chi_{n-1} + \Psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \alpha_{0,0} + \chi_1 \alpha_{0,1} + \cdots \chi_{n-1} \alpha_{0,n-1} + \Psi_0 \\ \chi_0 \alpha_{1,0} + \chi_1 \alpha_{1,1} + \cdots \chi_{n-1} \alpha_{1,n-1} + \Psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_0 \alpha_{m-1,0} + \chi_1 \alpha_{m-1,1} + \cdots \chi_{n-1} \alpha_{m-1,n-1} + \Psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

This discussion explains the IJ loop for computing  $y := Ax + y$ :

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
     $\Psi_i := \alpha_{i,j} \chi_j + \Psi_i$ 
  end
end
  }  $\Psi_i := \tilde{a}_j^T x + \Psi_i$ 

```

What it demonstrates is how matrix-vector multiplication can be implemented as a sequence of ... operations.

**Homework 1.4.1.1** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the implementation of MVM in terms of dot operations

```
#define alpha( i,j ) A[ (j)*ldA + i ] // map alpha( i,j ) to array A
#define chi( i ) x[ (i)*incx ] // map chi( i ) to array x
#define psi( i ) y[ (i)*incy ] // map psi( i ) to array x

void Dots( int, const double *, int, const double *, int, double * );
void Gemv_I_Dots( int m, int n, double *A, int ldA,
                  double *x, int incx, double *y, int incy )
{
    for ( int i=0; i<m; i++ )
        Dots( , , , , , );
}
```

Assignments/Week1/C/Gemv\_I\_Dots.c

in file **Gemv\_I\_Dots.c**. You will test this with an implementation of MMM in a later homework.

**SEE ANSWER**

Next, partitioning  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  by columns and  $x$  by individual elements, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} y &:= \left( a_0 \mid a_1 \mid \cdots \mid a_{n-1} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} + y \\ &= \chi_0 a_0 + \chi_1 a_1 + \cdots + \chi_{n-1} a_{n-1} + y. \end{aligned}$$

If we then expose the individual elements of  $A$  and  $y$  we get

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} \psi_0 \\ \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix} &:= \chi_0 \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} \\ \alpha_{1,0} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} \end{pmatrix} + \chi_1 \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,1} \\ \alpha_{1,1} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,1} \end{pmatrix} + \cdots + \chi_{n-1} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,n-1} \\ \alpha_{1,n-1} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,n-1} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \psi_0 \\ \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \alpha_{0,0} + \chi_1 \alpha_{0,1} + \cdots + \chi_{n-1} \alpha_{0,n-1} + \psi_0 \\ \chi_0 \alpha_{1,0} + \chi_1 \alpha_{1,1} + \cdots + \chi_{n-1} \alpha_{1,n-1} + \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_0 \alpha_{m-1,0} + \chi_1 \alpha_{m-1,1} + \cdots + \chi_{n-1} \alpha_{m-1,n-1} + \psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

This discussion explains the JI loop for computing  $y := Ax + y$ :

```

for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
  for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
     $\Psi_i := \alpha_{i,j} \chi_j + \Psi_i$ 
  end
end

```

What it also demonstrates is how matrix-vector multiplication can be implemented as a sequence of AXPY operations.

**Homework 1.4.1.2** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the implementation of MVM in terms of AXPY operations

```

#define alpha( i, j ) A[ (j)*ldA + i ] // map alpha( i, j ) to array A
#define chi( i ) x[ (i)*incx ] // map chi( i ) to array x
#define psi( i ) y[ (i)*incy ] // map psi( i ) to array x

void Dots( int, const double *, int, const double *, int, double * );

void Gemv_J_Axpy( int m, int n, double *A, int ldA,
                  double *x, int incx, double *y, int incy )
{
    for ( int j=0; j<n; j++ )
        Axpy( , , , , , );
}

```

Assignments/Week1/C/Gemv\_J\_Axpy.c

in file [Gemv\\_J\\_Axpy.c](#). You will test this with an implementation of MMM in a later homework.

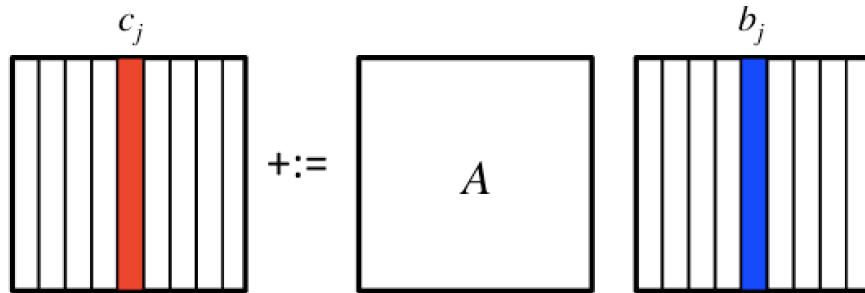
[SEE ANSWER](#)

## 1.4.2 Matrix-matrix multiplication via matrix-vector multiplications

Now that we are getting comfortable with partitioning matrices and vectors, we can view the six algorithms for  $C := AB + C$  in a more layered fashion. If we partition  $C$  and  $B$  by columns, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} c_0 & c_1 & \cdots & c_{n-1} \end{array} \right) &:= A \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} b_0 & b_1 & \cdots & b_{n-1} \end{array} \right) + \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} c_0 & c_1 & \cdots & c_{n-1} \end{array} \right) \\
 &= \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} Ab_0 + c_0 & Ab_1 + c_1 & \cdots & Ab_{n-1} + c_{n-1} \end{array} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

A picture that captures this is given by



This illustrates how the JIP and JPI algorithms can be viewed as a loop around matrix-vector multiplications:

```

for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
  for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
    for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p}\beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

$c_j := \beta_{p,j}a_p + c_j$ 
 $c_j := Ab_j + c_j$

and

```

for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
  for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
    for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p}\beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

$\gamma_{i,j} := \tilde{a}_i^T b_j + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
 $c_j := Ab_j + c_j$

**Homework 1.4.2.1** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the code in file `Gemm_J_Gemv_I_Dots.c`. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_J mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 1.4.2.2** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the code in file `Gemm_J_Gemv_J_Axpy.c`. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Gemm\\_J mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

The BLAS include the routine `dgemv` that computes

$$y := \alpha Ax + \beta y \quad \text{or} \quad y := \alpha A^T x + \beta y.$$

If

- $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  is stored in array `A` with its leading dimension stored in variable `ldA`,
- $m$  is stored in variable `m` and  $n$  is stored in variable `n`,
- vector  $x$  is stored in array `x` with its stride stored in variable `incx`,
- vector  $y$  is stored in array `y` with its stride stored in variable `incy`, and
- $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are stored in variables `alpha` and `beta`, respectively,

the  $y := \alpha Ax + \beta y$  translates, from C, into the call

```
dgemv_( "No transpose", &m, &n, &alpha, A, &ldA, x, &incx, &beta, y, &incy );
```

**Homework 1.4.2.3** In directory `Assignments/Week1/C/` complete the code in file `Gemm_J_dgemv.c` that casts `MMM` in terms of the `dgemv` BLAS routine. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_J.mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

The BLIS native call that is similar to the BLAS `dgemv` routine in this setting translates to

```
bli_dgemv( BLIS_NO_TRANSPOSE, BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, m, n, &alpha, A, 1, ldA, x, incx,
            &beta, y, incy );
```

Notice the two parameters after `A`. BLIS requires a row and column stride to be specified for matrices, thus generalizing beyond column-major order storage.

**Homework 1.4.2.4** In directory `Assignments/Week1/C/` complete the code in file `Gemm_J_bli_dgemv.c` that casts `MMM` in terms of the `bli_dgemv` BLIS routine. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_J.mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

### 1.4.3 Rank-1 update RANK-1

An operation that is going to become very important in future discussion and optimization of `MMM` is the rank-1 update:

$$A := xy^T + A.$$

Partitioning  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  by columns, and  $x$  and  $y$  by individual elements, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}
& \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,k-1} \\ \hline \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{1,k-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline \alpha_{m-1,0} & \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{m-1,k-1} \end{array} \right) := \\
& \quad \left( \begin{array}{c} \chi_0 \\ \hline \chi_1 \\ \hline \vdots \\ \hline \chi_{m-1} \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \psi_0 & \psi_1 & \cdots & \psi_{n-1} \end{array} \right) + \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,n-1} \\ \hline \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{1,n-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline \alpha_{m-1,0} & \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{m-1,n-1} \end{array} \right) \\
& = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \chi_0\psi_0 + \alpha_{0,0} & \chi_0\psi_1 + \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \chi_0\psi_{n-1} + \alpha_{0,n-1} \\ \hline \chi_1\psi_0 + \alpha_{1,0} & \chi_1\psi_1 + \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \chi_1\psi_{n-1} + \alpha_{1,n-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline \chi_{m-1}\psi_0 + \alpha_{m-1,0} & \chi_{m-1}\psi_1 + \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \chi_{m-1}\psi_{n-1} + \alpha_{m-1,n-1} \end{array} \right) \\
& = \left( \begin{array}{c} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{m-1} \end{array} \right) \psi_0 + \left( \begin{array}{c} \alpha_{0,0} \\ \alpha_{1,0} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} \end{array} \right) \left| \begin{array}{c} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{m-1} \end{array} \right) \psi_1 + \left( \begin{array}{c} \alpha_{0,1} \\ \alpha_{1,1} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,1} \end{array} \right) \left| \begin{array}{c} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{m-1} \end{array} \right) \psi_{n-1} + \left( \begin{array}{c} \alpha_{0,n-1} \\ \alpha_{1,n-1} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,n-1} \end{array} \right) \right).
\end{aligned}$$

What this illustrates is that we could have partitioned  $A$  by columns and  $y$  by elements to find that

$$\begin{aligned}
\left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} a_0 & a_1 & \cdots & a_{n-1} \end{array} \right) & := x \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \psi_0 & \psi_1 & \cdots & \psi_{n-1} \end{array} \right) + \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} a_0 & a_1 & \cdots & a_{n-1} \end{array} \right) \\
& = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} x\psi_0 + a_0 & x\psi_1 + a_1 & \cdots & x\psi_{n-1} + a_{n-1} \end{array} \right) \\
& = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \psi_0x + a_0 & \psi_1x + a_1 & \cdots & \psi_{n-1}x + a_{n-1} \end{array} \right).
\end{aligned}$$

This discussion explains the JI loop ordering for computing  $A := xy^T + A$ :

```

for  $j := 0, \dots, n-1$ 
  for  $i := 0, \dots, m-1$ 
     $\alpha_{i,j} := \chi_i \psi_j + \alpha_{i,j}$ 
  end
end

```

What it also demonstrates is how the rank-1 operation can be implemented as a sequence of AXPY operations.

**Homework 1.4.3.1** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the implementation of RANK-1 in terms of AXPY operations in file [Ger\\_J\\_Axpy.c](#). You will test this with an implementation of MMM in a later homework.

[SEE ANSWER](#)

Notice that there is also an IJ loop ordering that can be explained by partitioning  $A$  by rows and  $x$  by elements:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{a}_0^T \\ \tilde{a}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix} y^T + \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{a}_0^T \\ \tilde{a}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 y^T + \tilde{a}_0^T \\ \chi_1 y^T + \tilde{a}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{m-1} y^T + \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix}$$

leading to the algorithm

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
     $\alpha_{i,j} := \chi_i \Psi_j + \alpha_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end

```

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \alpha_{i,j} := \chi_i \Psi_j + \alpha_{i,j} \\ \end{array} \right\} \quad \tilde{a}_i^T := \chi_i y^T + \tilde{a}_i^T$$

and corresponding implementation.

**Homework 1.4.3.2** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the implementation of RANK-1 in terms of AXPY operations in file [Ger\\_I\\_Axpy.c](#). You will test this with an implementation of MMM in a later homework.

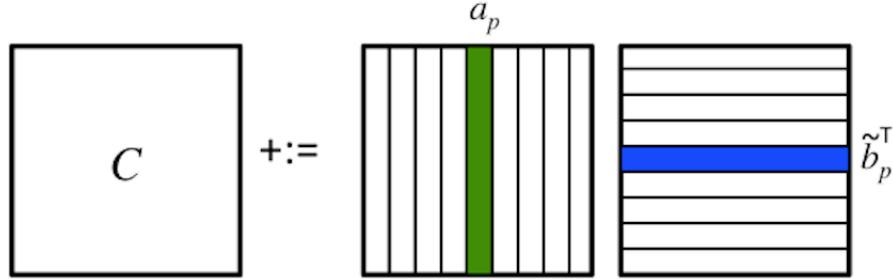
[SEE ANSWER](#)

#### 1.4.4 Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates

Next, let us partition  $A$  by columns and  $B$  by rows, so that

$$\begin{aligned}
 C &:= \left( a_0 \mid a_1 \mid \cdots \mid a_{k-1} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{b}_0^T \\ \tilde{b}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{b}_{k-1}^T \end{pmatrix} + C \\
 &= \underbrace{a_0 \tilde{b}_0^T}_{\text{---}} + \underbrace{a_1 \tilde{b}_1^T}_{\text{---}} + \cdots + \underbrace{a_{k-1} \tilde{b}_{k-1}^T}_{\text{---}} + C
 \end{aligned}$$

A picture that captures this is given by



This illustrates how the PJI and PIJ algorithms can be viewed as a loop around matrix-vector multiplications:

```

for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
    for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

$\left. \begin{array}{l} c_j := \beta_{p,j} a_p + c_j \\ C := a_p \tilde{b}_p^T + C \end{array} \right\}$

and

```

for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
  for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
    for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \tilde{c}_i^T := \alpha_{i,p} \tilde{b}_p^T + \tilde{c}_i^T \\ C := a_p \tilde{b}_p^T + C \end{array} \right\}$

**Homework 1.4.4.1** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the code in file `Gemm_P_Ger_J_Axpy.c`. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_P.mlx](#).

SEE ANSWER

**Homework 1.4.4.2** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the code in file `Gemm_P_Ger_I_Axpy.c`. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_P.mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

The BLAS include the routine `dger` that computes

$$A := \alpha xy^T + A$$

If

- $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  is stored in array `A` with its leading dimension stored in variable `ldA`,
- $m$  is stored in variable `m` and  $n$  is stored in variable `n`,
- vector  $x$  is stored in array `x` with its stride stored in variable `incx`,
- vector  $y$  is stored in array `y` with its stride stored in variable `incy`, and
- $\alpha$  is stored in variable `alpha`,

the  $A := \alpha xy^T + A$  translates, from C, into the call

```
dger_( &m, &n, &alpha, x, &incx, &beta, y, &incy, A, &ldA );
```

**Homework 1.4.4.3** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the code in file `Gemm_P_dger.c` that casts MMM in terms of the `dger` BLAS routine. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_P.mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

The BLIS native call that is similar to the BLAS `dger` routine in this setting translates to

```
bli_dger( BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, m, n, &alpha, x, incx,
           &beta, y, incy, A, 1, ldA );
```

Again, notice the two parameters after `A`. BLIS requires a row and column stride to be specified for matrices, thus generalizing beyond column-major order storage.

**Homework 1.4.4.4** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the code in file `Gemm_P_bli_dger.c` that casts MMM in terms of the `bli_dger` BLIS routine. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_P.mlx](#).

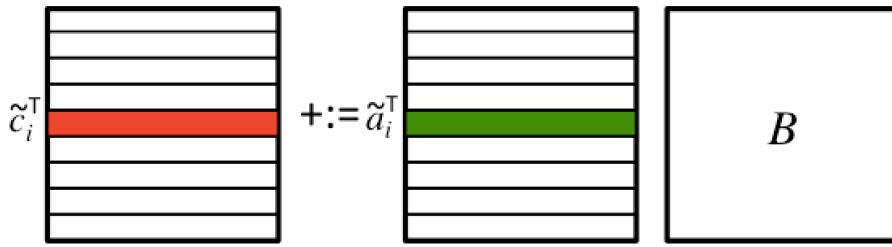
[SEE ANSWER](#)

### 1.4.5 Matrix-matrix multiplication via row-times-matrix multiplications

Finally, let us partition  $C$  and  $A$  by rows so that

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{a}_0^T \\ \tilde{a}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} B + \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{a}_0^T B + \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{a}_1^T B + \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T B + \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix}$$

A picture that captures this is given by



This illustrates how the IJP and IPJ algorithms can be viewed as a loop around the updating of a row of  $C$  with the product of the corresponding row of  $A$  times matrix  $B$ :

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
    for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
   $\tilde{c}_i^T := \tilde{a}_i^T B + \tilde{c}_i^T$ 
end

```

and

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, m - 1$ 
  for  $p := 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
    for  $j := 0, \dots, n - 1$ 
       $\gamma_{i,j} := \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}$ 
    end
     $\tilde{c}_i^T := \alpha_{i,p} \tilde{b}_p^T + \tilde{c}_i^T$ 
  end
   $\tilde{c}_i^T := \tilde{a}_i^T B + \tilde{c}_i^T$ 
end

```

The problem with implementing the above algorithms is that the GEMV implementations `Gemv_I_Dots` and `Gemv_J_Axpy` implement  $y := Ax + y$  rather than  $y^T := x^T A + y^T$ . Obviously, you could create new routines for this new operation. We will instead look at how to use the BLAS and BLIS interfaces.

Recall that the BLAS include the routine `dgemv` that computes

$$y := \alpha Ax + \beta y \quad \text{or} \quad y := \alpha A^T x + \beta y.$$

What we want is a routine that computes

$$y^T := x^T A + y^T$$

If we look at the equality

$$y^T = x^T A + y^T$$

then, transposing both sides, we get that

$$(y^T)^T = (x^T A + y^T)^T$$

which is equivalent to

$$y = (x^T A)^T + (y^T)^T$$

and finally

$$y = A^T x + y.$$

So, updating

$$y^T := x^T A + y^T$$

is equivalent to updating

$$y := A^T x + y.$$

If

- $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  is stored in array `A` with its leading dimension stored in variable `ldA`,
- $m$  is stored in variable `m` and  $n$  is stored in variable `n`,
- vector  $x$  is stored in array `x` with its stride stored in variable `incx`,
- vector  $y$  is stored in array `y` with its stride stored in variable `incy`, and
- $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are stored in variables `alpha` and `beta`, respectively,

then  $y := \alpha A^T x + \beta y$  translates, from C, into the call

```
dgemv_( "Transpose", &m, &n, &alpha, A, &ldA, x, &incx, &beta, y, &incy );
```

**Homework 1.4.5.1** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the code in file Gemm\_I\_dgemv.c that casts MMM in terms of the dgemv BLAS routine, but compute the result by rows. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_I mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

The BLIS native call that is similar to the BLAS dgemv routine in this setting translates to

```
bli_dgemv( BLIS_TRANSPOSE, BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, m, n, &alpha, A, lda, 1,
           x, incx, &beta, y, incy );
```

Because of the two parameters after A that capture the stride between elements in a column (the row stride) and elements in rows (the column stride), one can alternatively swap these parameters:

```
bli_dgemv( BLIS_NO_TRANSPOSE, BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, m, n, &alpha, A, lda, 1,
           x, incx, &beta, y, incy );
```

**Homework 1.4.5.2** In directory Assignments/Week1/C/ complete the code in file Gemm\_I\_bli\_dgemv.c that casts MMM in terms of the bli\_dgemv BLIS routine. View the resulting performance by make the necessary changes to the Live Script in [Plot\\_Outer\\_I mlx](#).

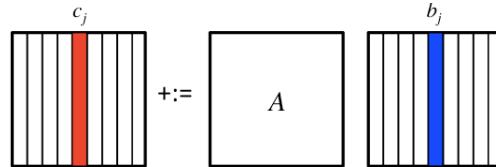
[SEE ANSWER](#)

## 1.4.6 Discussion

The point of this section is that one can think of matrix-matrix multiplication as one loop around

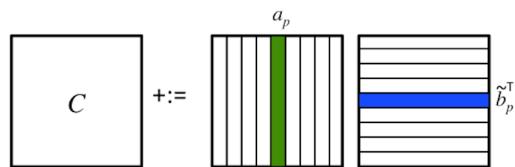
- multiple matrix-vector multiplications:

$$\left( c_0 \mid \cdots \mid c_{n-1} \right) = \left( Ab_0 + c_0 \mid \cdots \mid Ab_{n-1} + c_{n-1} \right)$$



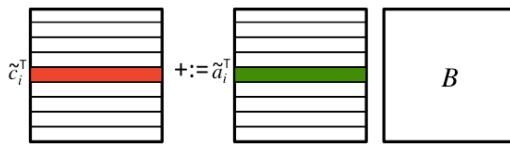
- multiple rank-1 updates:

$$C = a_0 \tilde{b}_0^T + a_1 \tilde{b}_1^T + \cdots + a_{k-1} \tilde{b}_{k-1}^T + C$$



- multiple row times matrix multiplications:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{a}_0^T B + \tilde{c}_0^T \\ \tilde{a}_1^T B + \tilde{c}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{a}_{m-1}^T B + \tilde{c}_{m-1}^T \end{pmatrix}$$



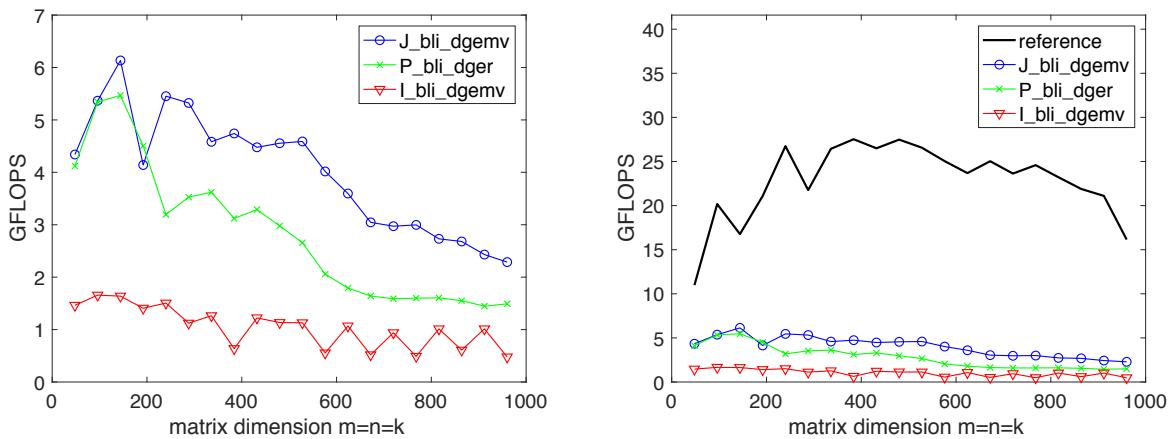


Figure 1.8: Performance for different choices of the outer loop, calling the BLIS typed interface, on Robert's laptop.

So, for the outer loop there are three choices:  $j$ ,  $p$ , or  $i$ . This may give the appearance that there are only three algorithms. However, the matrix-vector multiply and rank-1 update hide a double loop and the order of these two loops can be chosen, to bring us back to six choices for algorithms. Importantly, matrix-vector multiplication can be organized so that matrices are addressed by columns in the inner-most loop (the JI order for computing GEMV) as can the rank-1 update (the JI order for computing GER). For the implementation that picks the I loop as the outer loop, GEMV is utilized but with the transposed matrix. As a result, there is no way of casting the inner two loops in terms of operations with columns.

**Homework 1.4.6.1** In directory `Assignments/Week1/C/` use the Live Script in [Plot\\_Summary mlx](#) to compare and contrast the performance of algorithms that use the I, J, and P loop as the outer-most loop.

[SEE ANSWER](#)

From the performance experiments reported in Figure 1.8, we have observed that accessing matrices by columns, so that the most frequently loaded data is contiguous in memory, yields better performance. Still, the observed performance is much worse than can be achieved.

We have seen many examples of blocked matrix-matrix multiplication already, where matrices were partitioned by rows, columns, or individual entries. This will be explored and exploited further next week.

## 1.5 Enrichment

### 1.5.1 Counting flops

Floating point multiplies or adds are examples of floating point operation (flops). What we have noticed is that for all of our computations (..., AXPY, GEMV, GER, and GEMM) every floating point multiply is paired with a floating point add into a fused multiply-add (FMA).

Determining how many floating point operations are required for the different operations is relatively straight forward: If  $x$  and  $y$  are of size  $n$ , then

- $\gamma := x^T y + \gamma$  requires  $n$  FMAs and hence  $2n$  flops.
- $y := \alpha x + y$  requires  $n$  FMAs (one per pair of element, one from  $x$  and one from  $y$ ) and hence  $2n$  flops.

Similarly, it is pretty easy to establish that if  $A$  is  $m \times n$ , then

- $y := Ax + y$  requires  $mn$  FMAs and hence  $2mn$  flops.  
 $n$  AXPY operations each of size  $m$  for  $n \times 2m$  flops or  $m$  ... operations each of size  $n$  for  $m \times 2n$  flops.
- $A := xy^T + A$  required  $mn$  FMAs and hence  $2mn$  flops.  
 $n$  AXPY operations each of size  $m$  for  $n \times 2m$  flops or  $m$  AXPY operations each of size  $n$  for  $m \times 2n$  flops.

Finally, if  $C$  is  $m \times n$ ,  $A$  is  $m \times k$ , and  $B$  is  $k \times n$ , then  $C := AB + C$  requires  $2mnk$  flops. We can establish this by recognizing that if  $C$  is updated one column at a time, this takes  $n$  GEMV operations each with a matrix of size  $m \times k$ , for a total of  $n \times 2mk$ . Alternatively, if  $C$  is updated with rank-1 updates, then we get  $k \times 2mn$ .

When we run experiments, we tend to execute with matrices that are  $n \times n$ , where  $n$  ranges from small to large. Thus, the total operations required equal

$$\sum_{n=n_{\text{first}}}^{n_{\text{last}}} 2n^3 \text{ flops},$$

where  $n_{\text{first}}$  is the first problem size,  $n_{\text{last}}$  the last, and the summation is in increments of  $n_{\text{inc}}$ .

If  $n_{\text{last}} = n_{\text{inc}} \times N$  and  $n_{\text{inc}} = n_{\text{first}}$ , then we get

$$\sum_{n=n_{\text{first}}}^{n_{\text{last}}} 2n^3 = \sum_{i=1}^N 2(i \times n_{\text{inc}})^3 = 2n_{\text{inc}}^3 \sum_{i=1}^N i^3.$$

A standard trick is to recognize that

$$\sum_{i=1}^N i^3 \approx \int_0^N x^3 dx = \frac{1}{4}N^4.$$

So,

$$\sum_{n=n_{\text{first}}}^{n_{\text{last}}} 2n^3 \approx \frac{1}{2} n_{\text{inc}}^3 N^4 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{n_{\text{inc}}^4 N^4}{n_{\text{inc}}} = \frac{1}{2n_{\text{inc}}} n^4.$$

The important thing is that every time we double  $n_{\text{last}}$ , we have to wait, approximately, sixteen times as long for our experiments to finish...

An interesting question is why we count flops rather than FMAs. By now, you have noticed we like to report the rate of computation in billions of floating point operations per second, GFLOPS. Now, if we counted FMAs rather than flops, the number that represents the rate of computation would be half a large. For marketing purposes, bigger is better and hence flops are reported!

## 1.6 Wrapup

### 1.6.1 Additional exercises

### 1.6.2 Summary

Week **2**

# **Start Your Engines!**

## **2.1 Opener**

### **2.1.1 Launch**

The current plan is to discuss the memory hierarchy and how MMM allows data movement to be amortized.

## 2.1.2 Outline Week 2

<b>2.1. Opener</b>	41
2.1.1. Launch	41
2.1.2. Outline Week 2	42
2.1.3. What you will learn	43
<b>2.2. Using registers and vector instructions</b>	44
2.2.1. Blocked MMM	44
2.2.2. Computing with matrices in registers	46
2.2.3. Of vector registers, vector instructions, and instruction-level parallelism	50
<b>2.3. Optimizing the Microkernel</b>	55
2.3.1. Reuse of data in registers	55
2.3.2. More options	56
2.3.3. Amortizing data movement	60
2.3.4. Discussion	61
<b>2.4. Around the Microkernel</b>	61
2.4.1. The memory hierarchy	61
2.4.2. Maintaining performance beyond the L1 cache	63
2.4.3. Blocking for multiple caches	68
<b>2.5. Further Optimizing the Micro-kernel</b>	70
2.5.1. Packing	70
2.5.2. Further single core optimizations to try.	75
<b>2.6. Multithreaded parallelization</b>	77
2.6.1. OpenMP	77
2.6.2. Parallelizing the second loop around the micro-kernel	77
2.6.3. Parallelizing the first loop around the micro-kernel	79
2.6.4. Parallelizing the third loop around the micro-kernel	80
2.6.5. Speedup, efficiency, and Ahmdahl's law	82
2.6.6. Optimizing the packing	84
2.6.7. Overlapping data movement with computation	84
<b>2.7. Enrichment</b>	85
<b>2.8. Wrapup</b>	85

### **2.1.3 What you will learn**

## 2.2 Using registers and vector instructions

### 2.2.1 Blocked MMM

Key to understanding how we are going to optimize MMM is to understand blocked MMM. Consider  $C := AB + C$ . In terms of the elements of the matrices, this means that each  $\gamma_{i,j}$  is computed by

$$\gamma_{i,j} := \sum_{p=0}^{k-1} \alpha_{i,p} \beta_{p,j} + \gamma_{i,j}.$$

Now, partition the matrices into submatrices:

$$C = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} C_{0,0} & C_{0,1} & \cdots & C_{0,N-1} \\ \hline C_{1,0} & C_{1,1} & \cdots & C_{1,N-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline C_{M-1,0} & C_{M,1} & \cdots & C_{M-1,N-1} \end{array} \right), A = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} A_{0,0} & A_{0,1} & \cdots & A_{0,K-1} \\ \hline A_{1,0} & A_{1,1} & \cdots & A_{1,K-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline A_{M-1,0} & A_{M,1} & \cdots & A_{M-1,K-1} \end{array} \right),$$

and

$$B = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} B_{0,0} & B_{0,1} & \cdots & B_{0,N-1} \\ \hline B_{1,0} & B_{1,1} & \cdots & B_{1,N-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline B_{K-1,0} & B_{K,1} & \cdots & B_{K-1,N-1} \end{array} \right),$$

where

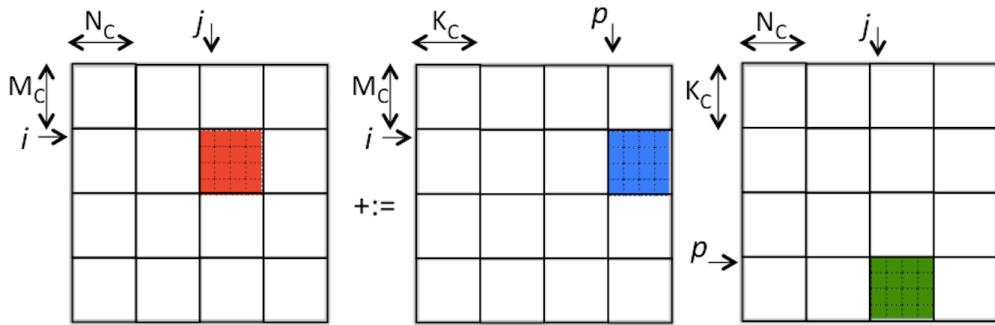
- $C_{i,j}$  is  $m_i \times n_j$ ,
- $A_{i,p}$  is  $m_i \times k_p$ , and
- $B_{p,j}$  is  $k_p \times n_j$

with

$\sum_{i=0}^{M-1} m_i = m$ ,  $\sum_{j=0}^{N-1} n_j = m$ , and  $\sum_{p=0}^{K-1} k_p = m$ . Then

$$C_{i,j} := \sum_{p=0}^{K-1} A_{i,p} B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}.$$

In other words, provided the partitioning of the matrices is “conformal,” MMM with partitioning matrices proceeds exactly as does MMM with the elements of the matrices *except* that the individual multiplications with the submatrices do not necessarily commute.

Figure 2.1: An illustration of a blocked algorithm where  $m_R = n_R = k_R = 4$ .

```

26
27 void Gemm_IJP_MRxNRxKR( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int ldA,
28                           double *B, int ldB, double *C, int ldc )
29 {
30     for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MR ) /* m is assumed to be a multiple of MR */
31         for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NR ) /* n is assumed to be a multiple of NR */
32             for ( int p=0; p<k; p+=KR ) /* k is assumed to be a multiple of KR */
33                 Gemm_MRxNRxKR( &alpha( i,p ), ldA, &beta( p,j ), ldB, &gamma( i,j ), ldc );
34 }
35
36 void Gemm_MRxNRxKR( double *A, int ldA, double *B, int ldB, double *C, int ldc )
37 {
38     for ( int i=0; i<MR; i++ )
39         for ( int j=0; j<NR; j++ )
40             for ( int p=0; p<KR; p++ )
41                 gamma( i,j ) += alpha( i,p ) * beta( p,j );
42 }
```

Assignments/Week2/C/Gemm\_IJP\_MRxNRxKR.c

Figure 2.2: Simple blocked algorithm that calls the kernel that updates a  $4 \times 4$  submatrix of  $C$ . Obviously, it only works when  $m$  and  $n$  are multiples of 4.

We illustrate how blocking  $C$  into  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrices,  $A$  into  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrices, and  $B$  into  $k_R \times n_R$  submatrices in Figure 2.1. An implementation of one such algorithm is given in Figure 2.2.

**Homework 2.2.1.1** In directory Assignments/Week2/C/ time the code in file Gemm\_IJP\_MRxNRxKR.c by executing test\_IJP\_MRxNRxKR. View its performance with Plot\_Kernelsmlx.

SEE ANSWER

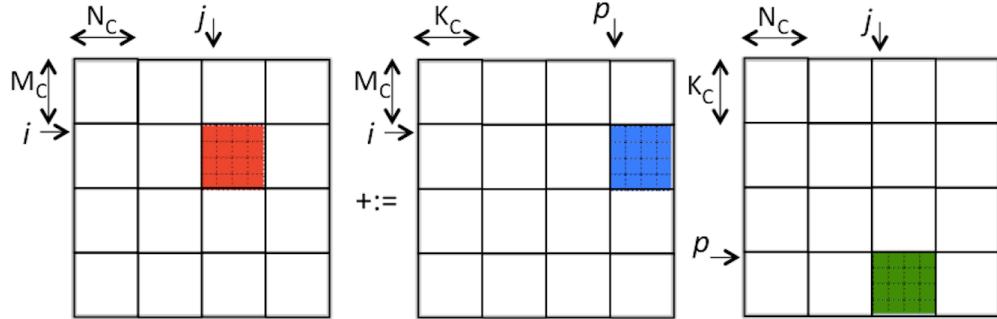
## 2.2.2 Computing with matrices in registers

For computation to happen, input data must be brought from memory into registers and output data written back to memory. For now let us make the following assumptions:

- Our processor has only one core.
- That core only has two levels of memory: registers and an L1 cache.
- Moving data to or from the L1 cache takes time  $\beta_{1 \leftrightarrow R}$  per double.
- The registers can hold 64 doubles.
- Performing a flop with data in registers takes time  $\gamma_R$ .
- Data movement and computation cannot overlap.

Later, we will change some of these assumptions.

Given that the registers can hold 64 doubles, let's first consider blocking  $C$ ,  $A$ , and  $B$  into  $4 \times 4$  submatrices. In other words, in Figure 2.1  $m_R = n_R = k_R = 4$ . Let us call the routine that computes with three blocks “the kernel”. Thus, the blocked algorithm is a triple-nested loop around a call to this kernel:



Here is a naive algorithm, that exposes the loading of submatrices into registers:

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, M - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, N - 1$ 
    for  $p := 0, \dots, K - 1$ 
      Load  $C_{i,j}$ ,  $A_{i,p}$ , and  $B_{p,j}$ 
       $C_{i,j} := A_{i,p}B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}$ 
      Store  $C_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end

```

The time required to complete this algorithm can be estimated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 & MNK(2m_Rn_Rk_R)\gamma_R + MNK(2m_Rn_R + m_Rk_R + k_Rn_R)\beta_{1 \leftrightarrow R} \\
 &= 2mnk\gamma_R + mnk\left(\frac{2}{k_R} + \frac{1}{n_R} + \frac{1}{m_R}\right)\beta_{1 \leftrightarrow R}.
 \end{aligned}$$

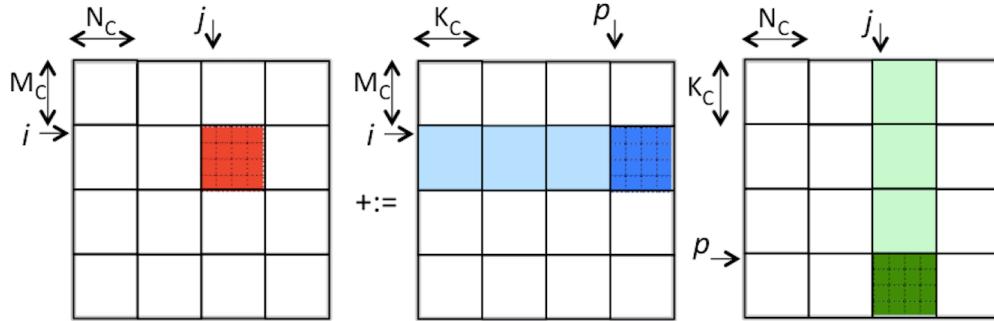
We next recognize that since the loop indexed with  $p$  is the inner-most loop, the loading and storing of  $C_{i,j}$  does not need to happen before every call to the kernel, yielding the algorithm

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, M - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, N - 1$ 
    Load  $C_{i,j}$ 
    for  $p := 0, \dots, K - 1$ 
      Load  $A_{i,p}$ , and  $B_{p,j}$ 
       $C_{i,j} := A_{i,p}B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}$ 
    end
    Store  $C_{i,j}$ 
  end
end

```

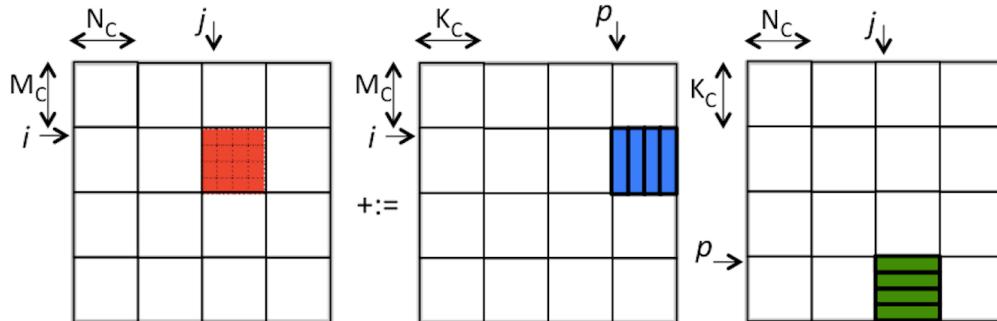
as illustrated by



This reduces the estimated cost to

$$\begin{aligned}
 & MNK(2m_R n_R k_R) \gamma_R + [MN(2m_R n_R) + MNK(m_R k_R + k_R n_R)] \beta_{1 \leftrightarrow R} \\
 & = 2mnk \gamma_R + \left[ 2mn + mnk \left( \frac{1}{n_R} + \frac{1}{m_R} \right) \right] \beta_{1 \leftrightarrow R}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Now, if the submatrix  $C_{i,j}$  were larger (i.e.,  $m_R$  and  $n_R$  were larger), then the overhead can be reduced. Obviously, we can use more registers (we are only storing 48 of a possible 64 doubles in registers when  $m_R = n_R = k_R = 4$ ). However, let's first discuss how to require fewer than 48 doubles to be stored while keeping  $m_R = n_R = k_R = 4$ . Recall from Week 1 that if the P loop of MMM is the outer-most loop, then the inner two loops implement a rank-1 update. If we do this for the kernel, then the result is illustrated by

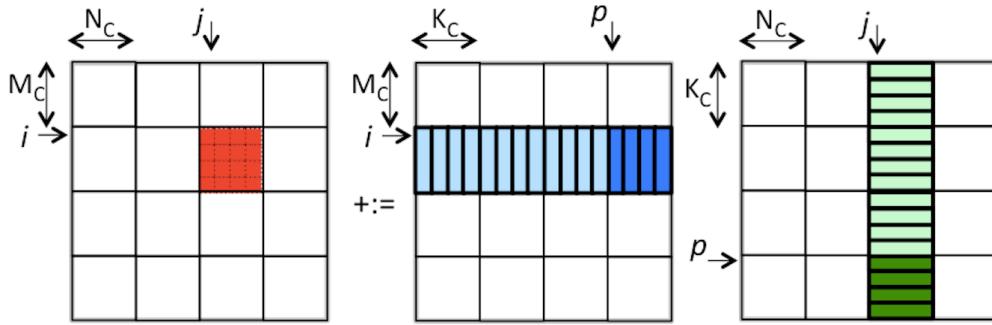


If we now consider the computation

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{red square} \\ + := \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{blue vertical bars} \\ \text{green vertical bars} \end{array} = \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{blue vertical bar} \\ \text{green horizontal bar} \end{array} + \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{blue vertical bar} \\ \text{green horizontal bar} \end{array} + \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{blue vertical bar} \\ \text{green horizontal bar} \end{array} + \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{blue vertical bar} \\ \text{green horizontal bar} \end{array}$$

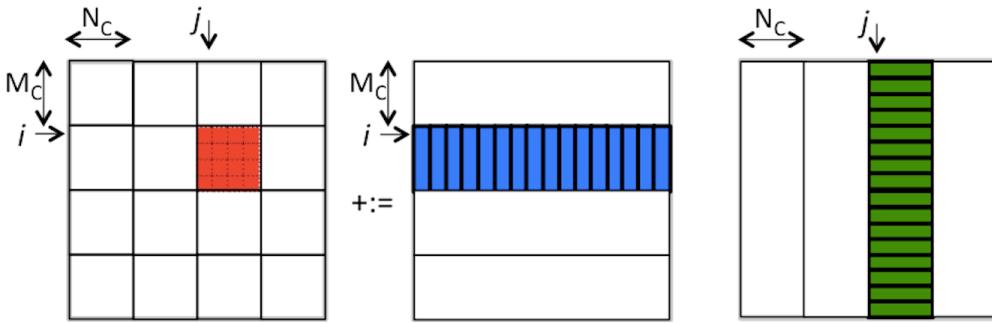
We recognize that after each rank-1 update, the column of  $A_{i,p}$  and row of  $B_{p,j}$  that participate in that rank-1 update are not needed again in the computation  $C_{i,j} := A_{i,p}B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}$ . Thus, only room for one such column of  $A_{i,p}$  and one such row of  $B_{p,j}$  needs to be reserved in the registers, reducing the total use of registers to  $m_R \times n_R + m_R + n_R$ . If  $m_R = n_R = 4$  this equals  $16 + 4 + 4 = 24$  doubles. That means in turn that, later,  $m_R$  and  $n_R$  can be chosen to be larger than if the entire blocks of  $A$  and  $B$  were stored.

If we now view the entire computation performed by the loop indexed with  $p$ , this can be illustrated by



and implemented, in terms of a call to the BLIS rank-1 update routine, in Figure 2.3.

What we now recognize is that matrices  $A$  and  $B$  need not be partitioned into  $m_R \times k_R$  and  $k_R \times n_R$  submatrices (respectively). Instead,  $A$  can be partitioned into  $m_R \times k$  row panels and  $B$  into  $k \times n_R$  column panels:



Another way of looking at this is that the inner loop indexed with  $p$  in the blocked algorithm can be merged with the outer loop of the kernel.

Bringing  $A_{i,p}$  one column at a time into registers and  $B_{p,j}$  one row at a time into registers, does not change the cost of reading that data. So, the cost of the resulting approach is still estimated as

$$\begin{aligned} & MNK(2m_Rn_Rk_R)\gamma_R + [MN(2m_Rn_R) + MNK(m_Rk_R + k_Rn_R)]\beta_{1 \leftrightarrow R} \\ &= 2mnk\gamma_R + \left[ 2mn + mnk\left(\frac{1}{n_R} + \frac{1}{m_R}\right) \right] \beta_{1 \leftrightarrow R}. \end{aligned}$$

```

27 void Gemm_IJP_P_bli_dger( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int lda,
28     double *B, int ldb, double *C, int ldc )
29 {
30     for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MR ) /* m is assumed to be a multiple of MR */
31         for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NR ) /* n is assumed to be a multiple of NR */
32             for ( int p=0; p<k; p+=KR ) /* k is assumed to be a multiple of KR */
33                 Gemm_P_bli_dger( MR, NR, KR, &alpha( i,p ), lda,
34                     &beta( p,j ), ldb, &gamma( i,j ), ldc );
35 }
36
37 void Gemm_P_bli_dger( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int lda,
38     double *B, int ldb, double *C, int ldc )
39 {
40     double d_one = 1.0;
41
42     for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ )
43         bli_dger( BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, m, n, &d_one, &alpha( 0,p ), 1,
44             &beta( p,0 ), ldb, C, 1, ldc, NULL );
45 }
```

Assignments/Week2/C/Gemm\_IJP\_P\_bli\_dger.c

Figure 2.3: Blocked matrix-matrix multiplication with kernel that casts  $C_{i,j} = A_{i,p}B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}$  in terms of rank-1 updates.

```

26 void Gemm_IJ_P_bli_dger( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int lda,
27     double *B, int ldb, double *C, int ldc )
28 {
29     for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MR ) /* m is assumed to be a multiple of MR */
30         for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NR ) /* n is assumed to be a multiple of NR */
31             Gemm_P_bli_dger( MR, NR, k, &alpha( i,p ), lda,
32                 &beta( 0,j ), ldb, &gamma( i,j ), ldc );
33 }
34
35 void Gemm_P_bli_dger( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int lda,
36     double *B, int ldb, double *C, int ldc )
37 {
38     double d_one = 1.0;
39
40     for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ )
41         bli_dger( BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, BLIS_NO_CONJUGATE, m, n, &d_one, &alpha( 0,p ), 1,
42             &beta( p,0 ), ldb, C, 1, ldc, NULL );
43 }
```

Assignments/Week2/C/Gemm\_IJ\_P\_bli\_dger.c

Figure 2.4: Blocked matrix-matrix multiplication that partitions  $A$  into row panels and  $B$  into column panels and casts the kernel in terms of rank-1 updates.

We can arrive at the same algorithm by partitioning

$$C = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} C_{0,0} & C_{0,1} & \cdots & C_{0,N-1} \\ \hline C_{1,0} & C_{1,1} & \cdots & C_{1,N-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline C_{M-1,0} & C_{M,1} & \cdots & C_{M-1,N-1} \end{array} \right), A = \left( \begin{array}{c} A_0 \\ \hline A_1 \\ \hline \vdots \\ \hline A_{M-1} \end{array} \right), \text{ and } B = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} B_0 & B_1 & \cdots & B_{0,N-1} \end{array} \right),$$

where  $C_{i,j}$  is  $m_R \times n_R$ ,  $A_i$  is  $m_R \times k$ , and  $B_j$  is  $k \times n_R$ . Then computing  $C := AB + C$  means updating  $C_{i,j} := A_i B_j + C_{i,j}$  for all  $i, j$ :

```

for  $i := 0, \dots, M - 1$ 
  for  $j := 0, \dots, N - 1$ 
     $C_{i,j} := A_i B_j + C_{i,j}$       } Computed with Gemm_P_MRxNR
  end
end

```

Obviously, the order of the two loops can be switched. The computation  $C_{i,j} := A_i B_j + C_{i,j}$  where  $C_{i,j}$  fits in registers now becomes what we will call the *inner-kernel*.

### 2.2.3 Of vector registers, vector instructions, and instruction-level parallelism

As the reader should have noticed by now, in MMM for every floating point multiplication a corresponding floating point addition is encountered to accumulate the result. For this reason, such floating point computations are usually cast in terms of *fused multiply add* (FMA) operations, performed by a floating point unit (FPU) of the core.

What is faster than computing one FMA at a time? Computing multiple FMAs at a time! To accelerate computation, modern cores are equipped with vector registers, vector instructions, and vector floating point units that can simultaneously perform multiple FMA operations. This is called *instruction-level parallelism*.

In this section, we are going to use Intel's *vector intrinsic instructions* for Intel's AVX instruction set to illustrate the ideas. Vector intrinsics are supported in the C programming language for performing these vector instructions. We illustrate how the intrinsic operations are used by using them to implement the inner-kernel for the case where  $m_R \times n_R = 4$ . Thus, for the remainder of this unit,  $C$  is  $m_R \times n_R = 4 \times 4$ ,  $A$  is  $m_R \times k = 4 \times k$ , and  $B$  is  $k \times n_R = k \times 4$ .

Now,  $C := AB$  when  $C$  is 4x4 translates to the computation

$$\left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \gamma_{0,0} & \gamma_{0,1} & \gamma_{0,2} & \gamma_{0,3} \\ \hline \gamma_{1,0} & \gamma_{1,1} & \gamma_{1,2} & \gamma_{1,3} \\ \hline \gamma_{2,0} & \gamma_{2,1} & \gamma_{2,2} & \gamma_{2,3} \\ \hline \gamma_{3,0} & \gamma_{3,1} & \gamma_{3,2} & \gamma_{3,3} \end{array} \right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
+ &:= \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \\ \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \\ \alpha_{2,0} & \alpha_{2,1} & \cdots & \\ \alpha_{3,0} & \alpha_{3,1} & \cdots & \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{cccc} \beta_{0,0} & \beta_{0,1} & \beta_{0,2} & \beta_{0,3} \\ \beta_{1,0} & \beta_{1,1} & \beta_{1,2} & \beta_{1,3} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \right) \\
&= \left( \begin{array}{cccc} \alpha_{0,0}\beta_{0,0} + \alpha_{0,1}\beta_{1,0} + \cdots & \alpha_{0,0}\beta_{0,1} + \alpha_{0,1}\beta_{1,1} + \cdots & \alpha_{0,0}\beta_{0,2} + \alpha_{0,1}\beta_{1,2} + \cdots & \alpha_{0,0}\beta_{0,3} + \alpha_{0,1}\beta_{1,3} + \cdots \\ \alpha_{1,0}\beta_{0,0} + \alpha_{1,1}\beta_{1,0} + \cdots & \alpha_{1,0}\beta_{0,1} + \alpha_{1,1}\beta_{1,1} + \cdots & \alpha_{1,0}\beta_{0,2} + \alpha_{1,1}\beta_{1,2} + \cdots & \alpha_{1,0}\beta_{0,3} + \alpha_{1,1}\beta_{1,3} + \cdots \\ \alpha_{2,0}\beta_{0,0} + \alpha_{2,1}\beta_{1,0} + \cdots & \alpha_{2,0}\beta_{0,1} + \alpha_{2,1}\beta_{1,1} + \cdots & \alpha_{2,0}\beta_{0,2} + \alpha_{2,1}\beta_{1,2} + \cdots & \alpha_{2,0}\beta_{0,3} + \alpha_{2,1}\beta_{1,3} + \cdots \\ \alpha_{3,0}\beta_{0,0} + \alpha_{3,1}\beta_{1,0} + \cdots & \alpha_{3,0}\beta_{0,1} + \alpha_{3,1}\beta_{1,1} + \cdots & \alpha_{3,0}\beta_{0,2} + \alpha_{3,1}\beta_{1,2} + \cdots & \alpha_{3,0}\beta_{0,3} + \alpha_{3,1}\beta_{1,3} + \cdots \end{array} \right) \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} \\ \alpha_{1,0} \\ \alpha_{2,0} \\ \alpha_{3,0} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta_{0,0} & \beta_{0,1} & \beta_{0,2} & \beta_{0,3} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,1} \\ \alpha_{1,1} \\ \alpha_{2,1} \\ \alpha_{3,1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta_{1,0} & \beta_{1,1} & \beta_{1,2} & \beta_{1,3} \end{pmatrix} + \cdots
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, updating  $4 \times 4$  matrix  $C$  can be implemented as a loop around rank-1 updates:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\textbf{for } p = 0, \dots, k-1 \\
&\quad \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \gamma_{0,0} & \gamma_{0,1} & \gamma_{0,2} & \gamma_{0,3} \\ \gamma_{1,0} & \gamma_{1,1} & \gamma_{1,2} & \gamma_{1,3} \\ \gamma_{2,0} & \gamma_{2,1} & \gamma_{2,2} & \gamma_{2,3} \\ \gamma_{3,0} & \gamma_{3,1} & \gamma_{3,2} & \gamma_{3,3} \end{array} \right) + := \left( \begin{array}{c} \alpha_{0,p} \\ \alpha_{1,p} \\ \alpha_{2,p} \\ \alpha_{3,p} \end{array} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \beta_{p,0} & \beta_{p,1} & \beta_{p,2} & \beta_{p,3} \end{pmatrix} \\
&\textbf{endfor}
\end{aligned}$$

or, equivalently to emphasize computations with vectors,

$$\begin{aligned}
&\textbf{for } p = 0, \dots, k-1 \\
&\quad \left( \begin{array}{l|l|l|l} \gamma_{0,0}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,0} & \gamma_{0,1}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,1} & \gamma_{0,2}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,2} & \gamma_{0,3}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,3} \\ \gamma_{1,0}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,0} & \gamma_{1,1}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,1} & \gamma_{1,2}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,2} & \gamma_{1,3}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,3} \\ \gamma_{2,0}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,0} & \gamma_{2,1}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,1} & \gamma_{2,2}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,2} & \gamma_{2,3}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,3} \\ \gamma_{3,0}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,0} & \gamma_{3,1}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,1} & \gamma_{3,2}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,2} & \gamma_{3,3}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,3} \end{array} \right) \\
&\textbf{endfor}
\end{aligned}$$

This, once again, shows how MMM can be cast in terms of a sequence of rank-1 updates, and that a rank-1 update can be implemented in terms of AXPY operations with columns of  $C$ .

Now we translate this in to code that employs vector instructions. To use the intrinsics, we start by including the header file `immintrin.h`.

```
#include <immintrin.h>
```

The declaration

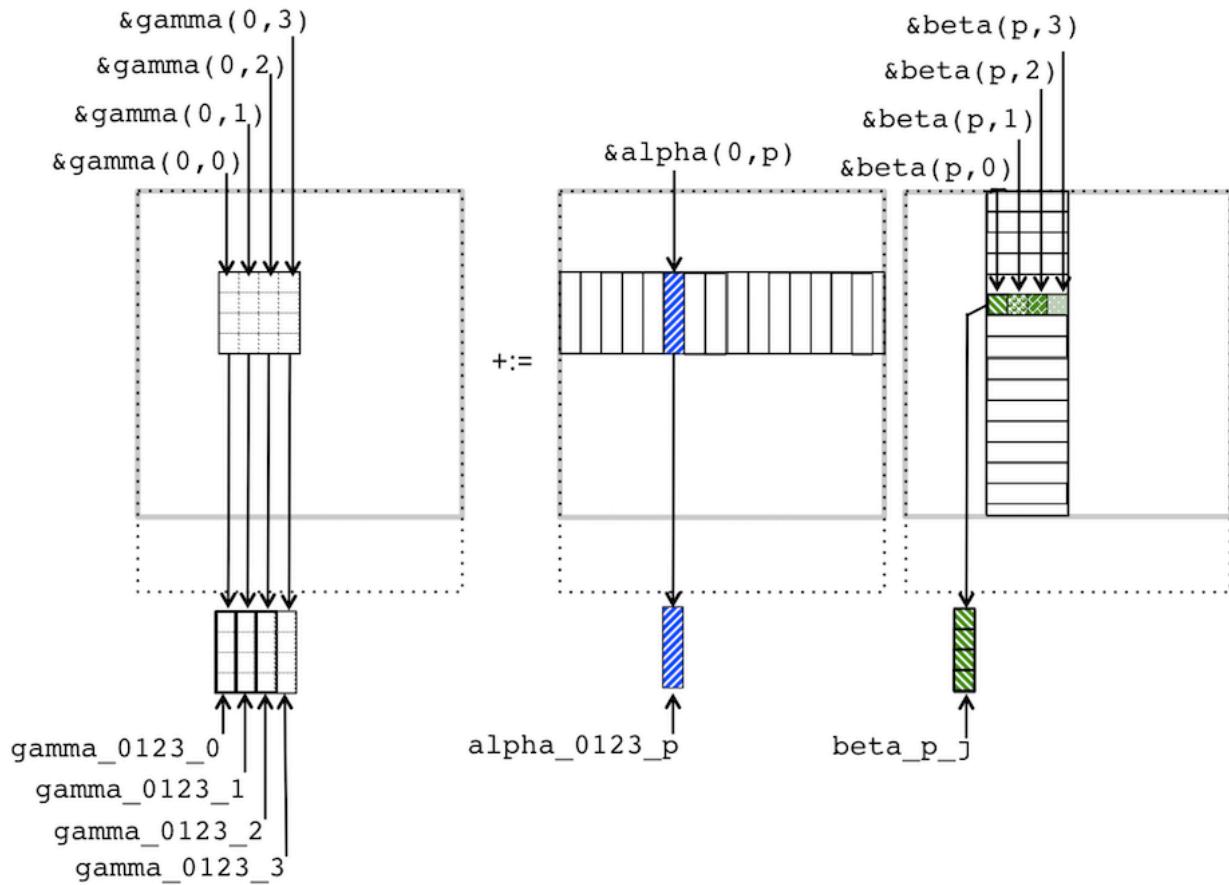


Figure 2.5: Illustration of how the routine in Figure 2.6 indexes into the matrices.

```
__m256d gamma_0123_0 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0, 0 ) );
```

creates  $\text{gamma\_0123\_0}$  as a variable that references a vector register with four double precision numbers and loads it with the four numbers that are stored starting at address  $\&\gamma( 0, 0 )$ . In other words, it loads the vector register with the original values

$$\begin{pmatrix} \gamma_{0,0} \\ \gamma_{1,0} \\ \gamma_{2,0} \\ \gamma_{3,0} \end{pmatrix}.$$

This is repeated for the other three columns of  $C$ .

The loop in Figure 2.6 implements

```

26 void Gemm_IJ_4x4Kernel( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int ldA,
27                           double *B, int ldb, double *C, int ldc )
28 {
29     for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MR ) /* m is assumed to be a multiple of MR */
30         for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NR ) /* n is assumed to be a multiple of NR */
31             Gemm_4x4Kernel( k, &alpha( i,0 ), ldA, &beta( 0,j ), ldb, &gamma( i,j ), ldc );
32 }
33
34 #include<immintrin.h>
35
36 void Gemm_4x4Kernel( int k, double *A, int ldA, double *B, int ldb,
37                       double *C, int ldc )
38 {
39     /* Declare vector registers to hold 4x4 C and load them */
40     __m256d gamma_0123_0 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0,0 ) );
41     __m256d gamma_0123_1 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0,1 ) );
42     __m256d gamma_0123_2 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0,2 ) );
43     __m256d gamma_0123_3 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0,3 ) );
44
45     for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ ){
46         /* Declare vector register for load/broadcasting beta( b,j ) */
47         __m256d beta_p_j;
48
49         /* Declare a vector register to hold the current column of A and load
50            it with the four elements of that column. */
51         __m256d alpha_0123_p = _mm256_loadu_pd( &alpha( 0,p ) );
52
53         /* Load/broadcast beta( p,0 ). */
54         beta_p_j = _mm256_broadcast_sd( &beta( p, 0 ) );
55
56         /* update the first column of C with the current column of A times
57            beta ( p,0 ) */
58         gamma_0123_0 = _mm256_fmadd_pd( alpha_0123_p, beta_p_j, gamma_0123_0 );
59
60         /* REPEAT for second, third, and fourth columns of C. Notice that the
61            current column of A needs not be reloaded. */
62     }
63
64     /* Store the updated results */
65     _mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma(0,0), gamma_0123_0 );
66     _mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma(0,1), gamma_0123_1 );
67     _mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma(0,2), gamma_0123_2 );
68     _mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma(0,3), gamma_0123_3 );
69 }

```

Assignments/Week2/C/Gemm\_IJ\_4x4Kernel.c

Figure 2.6: Partial routine for computing  $C := AB + C$  where  $C$  is  $4 \times 4$ .

**for**  $p = 0, \dots, k - 1$

$\gamma_{0,0}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,0}$	$\gamma_{0,1}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,1}$	$\gamma_{0,2}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,2}$	$\gamma_{0,3}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,3}$
$\gamma_{1,0}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,0}$	$\gamma_{1,1}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,1}$	$\gamma_{1,2}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,2}$	$\gamma_{1,3}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,3}$
$\gamma_{2,0}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,0}$	$\gamma_{2,1}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,1}$	$\gamma_{2,2}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,2}$	$\gamma_{2,3}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,3}$
$\gamma_{3,0}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,0}$	$\gamma_{3,1}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,1}$	$\gamma_{3,2}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,2}$	$\gamma_{3,3}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,3}$

**endfor**

leaving the result in the vector registers. Each iteration starts by declaring vector register variable `alpha_0123_p`, loading it with the contents of

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,p} \\ \alpha_{1,p} \\ \alpha_{2,p} \\ \alpha_{3,p} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Next,  $\beta_{p,0}$  is loaded into a vector register, duplicating that value to each entry in that register:

```
_m256d beta_p_j = _mm256_broadcast_sd( &beta( p, 0 ) );
```

The command

```
gamma_0123_0 = _mm256_fmadd_pd( alpha_0123_p, beta_p_j, gamma_0123_0 );
```

then performs the computation

$$\begin{pmatrix} \gamma_{0,0}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,0} \\ \gamma_{1,0}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,0} \\ \gamma_{2,0}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,0} \\ \gamma_{3,0}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,0} \end{pmatrix}.$$

We leave it to the reader to add the commands that compute

$$\begin{pmatrix} \gamma_{0,1}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,1} \\ \gamma_{1,1}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,1} \\ \gamma_{2,1}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,1} \\ \gamma_{3,1}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} \gamma_{0,2}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,2} \\ \gamma_{1,2}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,2} \\ \gamma_{2,2}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,2} \\ \gamma_{3,2}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,2} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix} \gamma_{0,3}+ := \alpha_{0,p} \times \beta_{p,3} \\ \gamma_{1,3}+ := \alpha_{1,p} \times \beta_{p,3} \\ \gamma_{2,3}+ := \alpha_{2,p} \times \beta_{p,3} \\ \gamma_{3,3}+ := \alpha_{3,p} \times \beta_{p,3} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Upon completion of the loop, the results are stored back into the original arrays with the commands

```
_mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma( 0, 0 ), gamma_0123_0 );
_mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma( 0, 1 ), gamma_0123_1 );
_mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma( 0, 2 ), gamma_0123_2 );
_mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma( 0, 3 ), gamma_0123_3 );
```

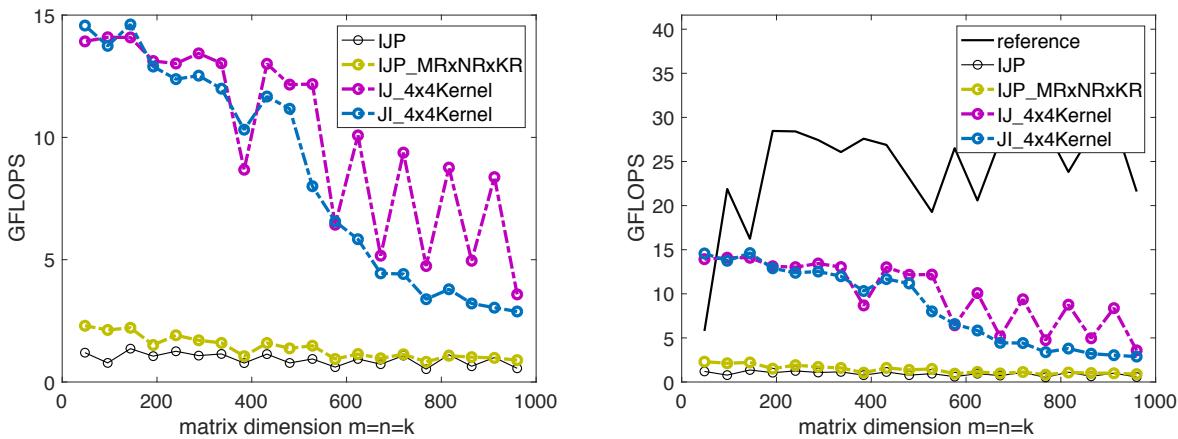


Figure 2.7:

**Homework 2.2.3.2** In directory Assignments/Week2/C/ complete the code in file `Gemm_IJ_4x4Kernel.c`. View its performance with [data/Plot\\_Kernels mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 2.2.3.3** In directory Assignments/Week2/C/ copy file `Gemm_IJ_4x4Kernel.c` to `Gemm_JI_4x4Kernel.c` and reverse the I and J loops. View its performance with [data/Plot\\_Kernels mlx](#).

[SEE ANSWER](#)

The form of parallelism illustrated here is often referred to as Single Instruction, Multiple Data (SIMD) parallelism. The same (FMA) instruction is performed with data in multiple different registers.

On Robert's laptop, we are starting to see some progress, as illustrated in Figure 2.7.

## 2.3 Optimizing the Microkernel

### 2.3.1 Reuse of data in registers

In Section 2.2.3, we introduced the fact that modern architectures have vector registers and then showed how to (somewhat) optimize the update of a  $4 \times 4$  submatrix of  $C$ .

Some observations:

- Four vector registers are used for the submatrix of  $C$ . Once loaded, those values remain in the registers for the duration of the computation, until they are finally written out once they have been completely updated. It is important to keep values of  $C$  in registers that long, because values of  $C$  are read as well as written, unlike values from  $A$  and  $B$ , which are read but not written.

- The block is  $4 \times 4$ . In general, the block is  $m_R \times n_R$ , where in this case  $m_R = n_R = 4$ . If we assume we will use  $R_C$  registers for elements of the submatrix of  $C$ , what should  $m_R$  and  $n_R$  be, given the constraint that  $m_R \times n_R = R_C$ ?
- Given that some registers need to be used for elements of  $A$  and  $B$ , how many registers should be used for elements of each of the matrices? In our implementation in the last section, we needed one vector register for four elements of  $A$  and one vector register for one (broadcast) element of  $B$ . Thus,  $16 + 4 + 1$  elements of matrices were being stored in 6 out of 16 available vector registers.

What we notice is that, if we ignore the cost of loading and storing elements of  $C$ , loading four doubles from matrix  $A$  and loading/broadcasting four doubles from matrix  $B$  is amortized over 32 flops. The ratio is 32 flops for 8 loads, or 4 flops/load.

### 2.3.2 More options

**Homework 2.3.2.4** Modify `Gemm_JI_4x4Kernel.c` to implement the case where  $m_R = 8$  and  $n_R = 4$ , storing the result in `Gemm_JI_8x4Kernel.c`. Don't forget to update `MR` and `NR`! You can test the result by typing

```
make test_JI_8x4Kernel
```

in that directory.  [data/Plot\\_Kernels mlx](#).

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 2.3.2.5** How many vector registers are needed for the implementation in Homework 2.3.2.4?

Ignoring the cost of loading the registers with the  $8 \times 4$  submatrix of  $C$ , analyze the ratio of flops to loads for the implementation in Homework 2.3.2.4.

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

```
1 #include <stdio.h>
2 #include <stdlib.h>
3
4 #define alpha( i,j ) A[ (j)*ldA + (i) ] // map alpha( i,j ) to array A
5 #define beta( i,j ) B[ (j)*ldB + (i) ] // map beta( i,j ) to array B
6 #define gamma( i,j ) C[ (j)*ldC + (i) ] // map gamma( i,j ) to array C
7
8 #define MR 4
9 #define NR 4
10
11 void Gemm_JI_4x4Kernel( int, int, int, double *, int, double *, int, double *, int );
12
13 void Gemm_4x4Kernel( int, double *, int, double *, int, double *, int );
14
15 void GemmWrapper( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int ldA,
16                     double *B, int ldB, double *C, int ldc )
17 {
18     if ( m % MR != 0 || n % NR != 0 ){
19         printf( "m and n must be multiples of MR and NR, respectively \n" );
20         exit( 0 );
21     }
22
23     Gemm_JI_4x4Kernel( m, n, k, A, ldA, B, ldB, C, ldc );
24 }
25
26 void Gemm_JI_4x4Kernel( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int ldA,
27                         double *B, int ldB, double *C, int ldc )
28 {
29     for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NR ) /* n is assumed to be a multiple of NR */
30         for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MR ) /* m is assumed to be a multiple of MR */
31             Gemm_4x4Kernel( k, &alpha( i,0 ), ldA, &beta( 0,j ), ldB, &gamma( i,j ), ldc );
32 }
```

Assignments/Week2/C/Gemm\_JI\_4x4Kernel.c

Figure 2.8: General framework for calling a kernel, instantiated for the case where  $m_R = n_R = 4$ . (Continued in Figure 2.9.)

```
34 #include<immintrin.h>
35
36 void Gemm_4x4Kernel( int k, double *A, int ldA, double *B, int ldB,
37     double *C, int ldC )
38 {
39     /* Declare vector registers to hold 4x4 C and load them */
40     __m256d gamma_0123_0 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0,0 ) );
41     __m256d gamma_0123_1 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0,1 ) );
42     __m256d gamma_0123_2 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0,2 ) );
43     __m256d gamma_0123_3 = _mm256_loadu_pd( &gamma( 0,3 ) );
44
45     for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ ){
46         /* Declare vector register for load/broadcasting beta( b,j ) */
47         __m256d beta_p_j;
48
49         /* Declare a vector register to hold the current column of A and load
50            it with the four elements of that column. */
51         __m256d alpha_0123_p = _mm256_loadu_pd( &alpha( 0,p ) );
52
53         /* Load/broadcast beta( p,0 ). */
54         beta_p_j = _mm256_broadcast_sd( &beta( p, 0 ) );
55
56         /* update the first column of C with the current column of A times
57            beta ( p,0 ) */
58         gamma_0123_0 = _mm256_fmadd_pd( alpha_0123_p, beta_p_j, gamma_0123_0 );
59
60         /* REPEAT for second, third, and fourth columns of C. Notice that the
61            current column of A needs not be reloaded. */
62     }
63
64     /* Store the updated results */
65     _mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma(0,0), gamma_0123_0 );
66     _mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma(0,1), gamma_0123_1 );
67     _mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma(0,2), gamma_0123_2 );
68     _mm256_storeu_pd( &gamma(0,3), gamma_0123_3 );
69 }
```

Assignments/Week2/C/Gemm\_JI\_4x4Kernel.c

Figure 2.9: Continued: General framework for calling a kernel, instantiated for the case where  $m_R = n_R = 4$ .)

**Homework 2.3.2.6** In the last few exercises, we considered  $m_R \times n_R = 4 \times 4$  and  $m_R \times n_R = 8 \times 4$ , where elements of  $A$  are loaded without duplication into vector registers (and hence  $m_R$  must be a multiple of 4), and elements of  $B$  are loaded/broadcast. Extending this approach to loading  $A$  and  $B$ , complete the entries in the following table:

$m_R \times n_R$	# vector registers	flops/load
$4 \times 1$		/ =
$4 \times 2$		/ =
$4 \times 4$	6	$32 / 8 = 4$
$4 \times 12$		/ =
$4 \times 14$		/ =
$8 \times 4$	11	$64 / 12 = 5.33$
$8 \times 6$		/ =
$12 \times 4$		/ =
$16 \times 2$		/ =
$16 \times 3$		/ =

☞ SEE ANSWER

**Homework 2.3.2.7** At this point, you have already implemented the following kernels:

Assignments/Week2/C/Gemm\_JI\_4x4Kernel.c and  
Assignments/Week2/C/Gemm\_JI\_8x4Kernel.c.

Implement the more promising of the kernels you analyzed in the last homework. They can be executed by typing

make test\_JI\_?x?Kernel

where the ?'s are replaced with the obvious choices of  $m_R$  and  $n_R$ . Don't forget to update MR and NR! The resulting performance can again be viewed with Live Script Assignments/Week2/C/Plot\_Kernels mlx.

☞ SEE ANSWER

In Figure 2.10, we show the performance of MMM cast in terms of various micro-kernel calls on Robert's laptop.

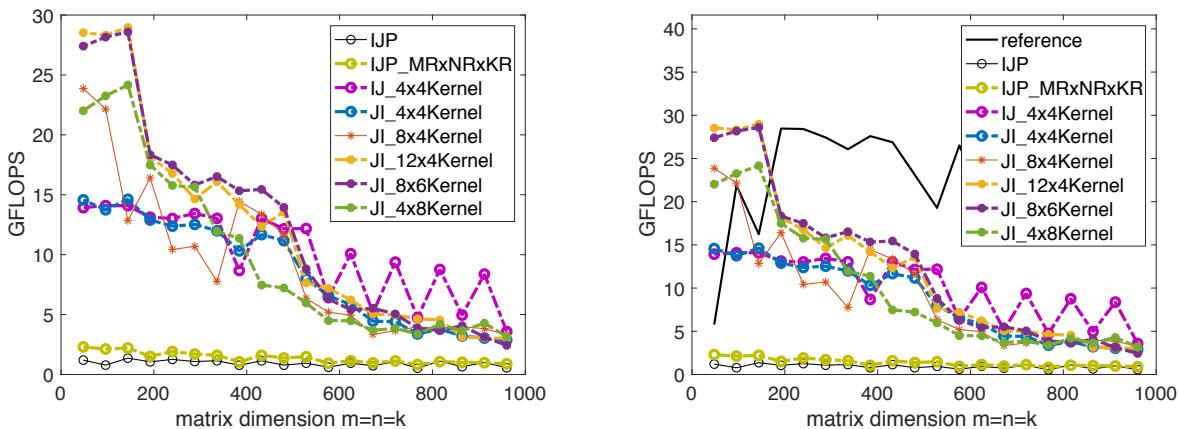


Figure 2.10: .

### 2.3.3 Amortizing data movement

As we have already discussed, one of the fundamental principles behind high performance is that when data is moved from one layer of memory to another, one needs to amortize the cost of that data movement over as many computations as possible. In our discussion so far, we have only discussed two layers of memory: (vector) registers and an L1 cache.

Let us focus on the current approach:

- Four vector registers are loaded with a  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrix of  $C$ . The cost of loading and unloading this data is negligible if  $k$  size is large.
- $m_R/4$  vector register is loaded with the current column of  $A$ , with  $m_R$  elements. In our picture, we call this register `alpha_0123.p`. The cost of this load is amortized over  $2m_R \times n_R$  floating point operations.
- One vector register is loaded with broadcast elements of the current row of  $B$ . The loading of the  $n_R$  of the elements is also amortized over  $2m_R \times n_R$  floating point operations.

To summarize, ignoring the cost of loading the submatrix of  $C$ , this would then require

$$m_R + n_R$$

floating point number loads from slow memory,  $m_R$  elements of  $A$  and  $n_R$  elements of  $B$ , which are amortized over  $2 \times m_R \times n_R$  flops, for each rank-1 update.

If loading a double as part of vector load costs the same as the loading and broadcasting of a double, then the problem of finding the optimal choices of  $m_R$  and  $n_R$  can be stated as finding the  $m_R$  and  $n_R$  that optimize

$$\frac{2m_R n_R}{m_R + n_R}$$

under the constraint that

$$m_R n_R + m_R + 1 = r_C,$$

where  $r_c$  equals the number of doubles that can be stored in vector registers.

Finding the optimal solution is somewhat nasty, even if  $m_R$  and  $n_R$  are allowed to be real valued rather than integers. If we recognize that  $m_R + 1$  is small relative to  $m_R n_R$ , and therefore ignore that those need to be kept in registers, we instead end up with having to find the  $m_R$  and  $n_R$  that optimize

$$\frac{2m_R n_R}{m_R + n_R}$$

under the constraint that

$$m_R n_R = r_C.$$

This is actually a standard problem in calculus, used to find the sides of the rectangle with length  $x$  and width  $y$  that maximizes the area of the rectangle,  $xy$ , under the constraint that the length of the perimeter is constant. The answer for that problem is that the rectangle should be a square. Thus, we want the submatrix of  $C$  that is kept in registers to be squarish.

In practice, we have seen that the shape of the block of  $C$  kept in registers is noticeably not square. The reason for this is that, all other issues being equal, loading a double as part of a vector load requires fewer cycles than loading a double as part of a load/broadcast.

### 2.3.4 Discussion

Notice that we have analyzed that we must amortize the loading of elements of  $A$  and  $B$  over, at best, a few flops per such element. The “latency” from main memory (the time it takes for a double precision number to be fetched from main memory) is equal to the time it takes to perform on the order of 100 flops. Thus, “feeding the beast” from main memory spells disaster. Fortunately, modern architectures are equipped with multiple layers of cache memories that have a lower latency.

In Figure 2.11 (top-left), we report the performance attained by our implementation for Homework ??, with  $m_R = n_R = 4$ . What we notice is that when the matrices are small enough to roughly fit in the L2 cache, performance is somewhat respectable, relative to a high-performance reference implementation. The performance drops when they fit in the (slower) L3 cache, and performance drops again once the matrices are large enough that they don’t fit in the L3 cache.

## 2.4 Around the Microkernel

### 2.4.1 The memory hierarchy

The inconvenient truth is that floating point computations can be performed very fast while bringing data in from main memory is relatively slow. How slow? On a typical architecture it takes two orders of magnitude more time to bring a floating point number in from main memory than it takes to compute with it.

The reason why main memory is slow is relatively simple: there is not enough room on a chip for the large memories that we are accustomed to, and hence they are off chip. The mere

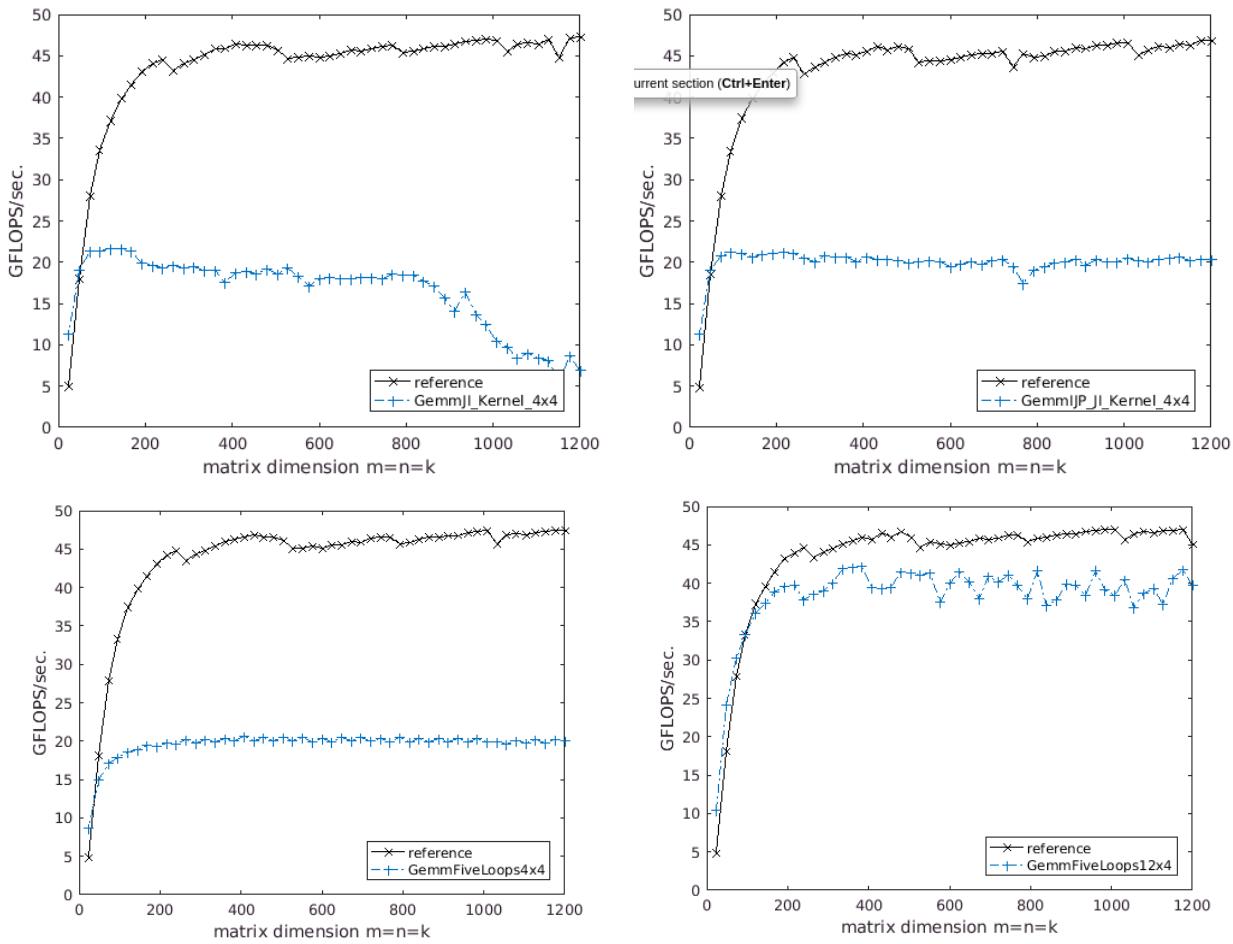


Figure 2.11: Top-left: Our performance for the exercise in Homework ??, where we created a double loop around the computation of  $4 \times 4$  submatrices of  $C$ . Top-right: Our performance for the exercise in Homework ??, where we partitioned the matrices into (roughly) square blocks, for each of which we then called the routine used in the top-left graph. Bottom-left: An implementation of the algorithm in Figure 2.16, utilizing the micro-kernel (coded with vector intrinsic function) for  $m_R \times n_R = 4 \times 4$ . Bottom-right: Same routine as for the bottom-left graph, but with a  $m_R \times n_R = 12 \times 4$  micro-kernel.

distance creates a latency for retrieving the data. This could then be offset by retrieving a lot of data simultaneously. Unfortunately there are inherent bandwidth limitations: there are only so many pins that can connect the central processing unit with main memory.

To overcome this limitation, a modern processor has a hierarchy of memories. We have already encountered the two extremes: registers and main memory. In between, there are smaller but faster *cache memories*. These cache memories are on-chip and hence do not carry the same latency as does main memory and also can achieve greater bandwidth. The hierarchical nature of these memories is often depicted as a pyramid as illustrated in Figure 2.12. To put things in perspective: We have discussed that the Haswell processor has sixteen vector processors that can store 64 double

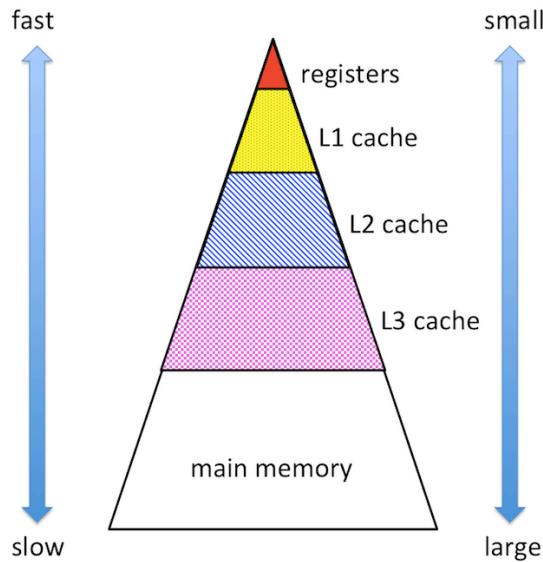


Figure 2.12: Illustration of the memory hierarchy.

precision floating point numbers (doubles). Close to the CPU it has a 32Kbytes level-1 cache (L1 cache) that can thus store 4,096 doubles. Somewhat further it has a 256Kbytes level-2 cache (L2 cache) that can store 32,768 doubles. Further away yet, but still on chip, it has a 8Mbytes level-3 cache (L3 cache) that can hold 524,288 floats.

In the below discussion, we will pretend that one can place data in a specific cache and keep it there for the duration of computations. In fact, caches retain data using some replacement policy that evicts data that has not been recently used. By carefully ordering computations, we can encourage data to remain in cache, which is what happens in practice.

## 2.4.2 Maintaining performance beyond the L1 cache

Let us, for the sake of argument, start with the following assumptions:

- The architecture has one level of cache.
- To attain high performance, the kernel we wrote must use data that is stored in that cache. In other words, the  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrix of  $C$ , the  $m_R \times k_c$  submatrix of  $A$ , and the  $k_c \times n_R$  submatrix of  $B$  must all reside in that cache. Here parameter  $k_c$  will become clear as our explanation proceeds.

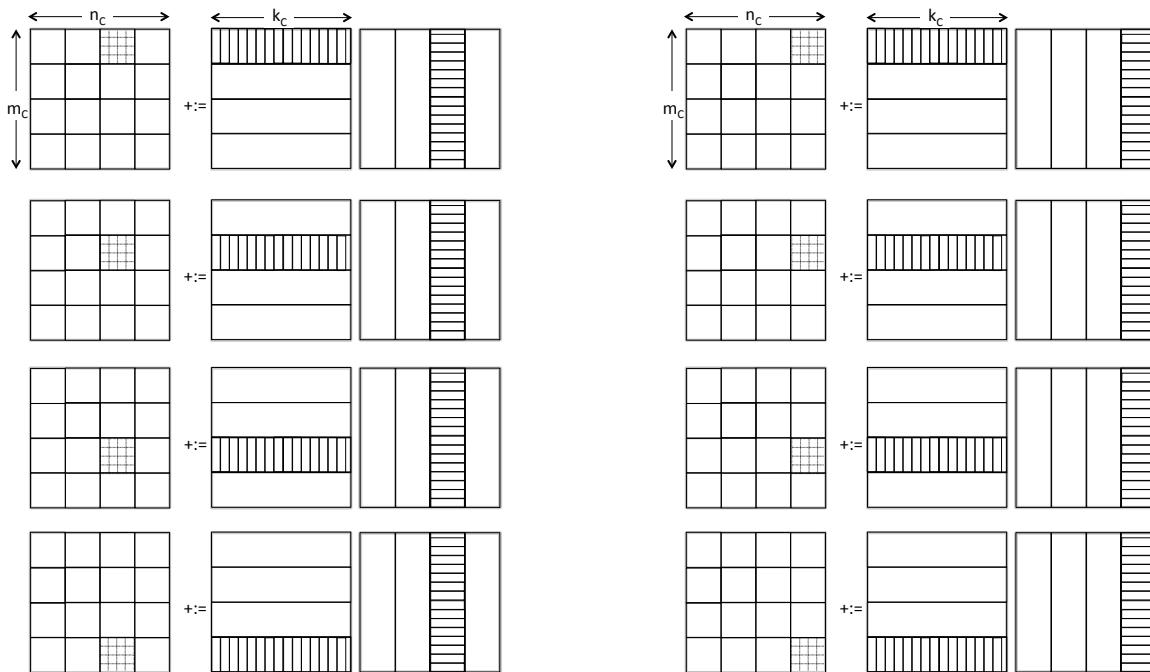
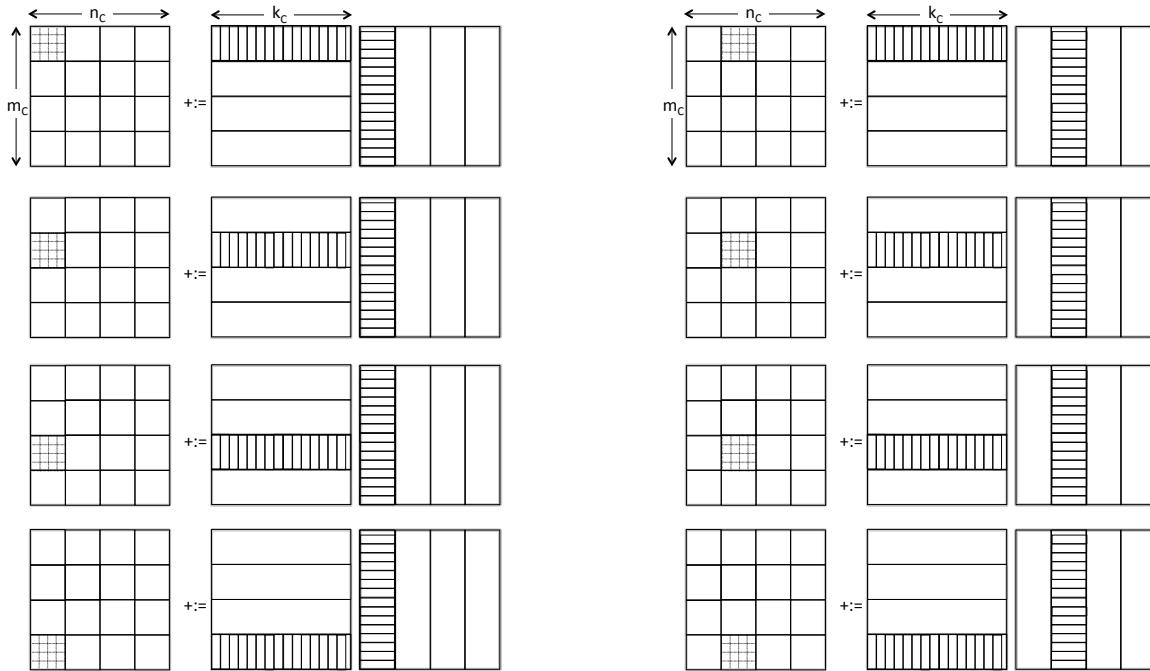


Figure 2.13: Illustration of computation in the cache with one block from each of  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ .

A naive approach partitions  $C$ ,  $A$ , and  $B$  into (roughly) square blocks:

$$C = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} C_{0,0} & C_{0,1} & \cdots & C_{0,N-1} \\ \hline C_{1,0} & C_{1,1} & \cdots & C_{1,N-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline C_{M-1,0} & C_{M,1} & \cdots & C_{M-1,N-1} \end{array} \right), A = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} A_{0,0} & A_{0,1} & \cdots & A_{0,K-1} \\ \hline A_{1,0} & A_{1,1} & \cdots & A_{1,K-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline A_{M-1,0} & A_{M,1} & \cdots & A_{M-1,K-1} \end{array} \right),$$

and

$$B = \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} B_{0,0} & B_{0,1} & \cdots & B_{0,N-1} \\ \hline B_{1,0} & B_{1,1} & \cdots & B_{1,N-1} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \hline B_{K-1,0} & B_{K,1} & \cdots & B_{K-1,N-1} \end{array} \right),$$

where

- $C_{i,j}$  is  $m_c \times n_c$ ,
- $A_{i,p}$  is  $m_c \times k_c$ , and
- $B_{p,j}$  is  $k_c \times n_c$ .

Then

$$C_{i,j} := \sum_{p=0}^{K-1} A_{i,p} B_{p,j} + C_{i,j},$$

which can be written as the triple-nested loop

```

for  $I := 0, \dots, M - 1$ 
  for  $J := 0, \dots, N - 1$ 
    for  $P := 0, \dots, K - 1$ 
       $C_{i,j} := A_{i,p} B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}$ 
    end
  end
end
```

(or any of the other loop orderings.)

If we choose  $m_c$ ,  $n_c$ , and  $k_c$  such that  $C_{i,j}$ ,  $A_{i,p}$ , and  $B_{p,j}$  all fit in the cache, then we meet our conditions. We can then compute  $C_{i,j} := A_{i,p} B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}$  by bringing these blocks into cache and computing with them before writing out the result, as before.

```

#define alpha( i,j ) A[ (j)*ldA + (i) ] // map alpha( i,j ) to array A
#define beta( i,j ) B[ (j)*ldB + (i) ] // map beta( i,j ) to array B
#define gamma( i,j ) C[ (j)*ldC + (i) ] // map gamma( i,j ) to array C

#define min( x, y ) ( (x) < (y) ? x : y )

#define MR 4
#define NR 4

#define MC 128
#define NC 128
#define KC 128

void GemmIntrinsicsKernel_MRxNR( int, double *, int, double *, int,
                                 double *, int );

void GemmJI_Kernel_MRxNR( int, int, int, double *, int, double *, int,
                          double *, int );

void GemmIJP_JI_Kernel_MRxNR( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int ldA,
                             double *B, int ldB, double *C, int ldC )
{
    int ib, jb, pb;

    for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MC ) {
        ib = min( MC, m-i ); /* Last block may not be a full block */
        for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NC ) {
            jb = min( NC, n-j ); /* Last block may not be a full block */
            for ( int p=0; p<k; p+=KC ) {
                pb = min( KC, k-p ); /* Last block may not be a full block */

                GemmJI_Kernel_MRxNR( ib, jb, pb,
                                      &alpha( i,p ), ldA, &beta( p,j ), ldB, &gamma( i,j ), ldC );
            }
        }
    }
}

```

[github/LAFF–On–PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmIJP\\_JI\\_Kernel\\_MRxNR.c](https://github.com/LLNL/LAFF-On-PfHPC/blob/master/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmIJP_JI_Kernel_MRxNR.c)

Figure 2.14: Triple loop around  $C_{i,j} := A_{i,p}B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}$  as implemented by GemmIJP\_JI\_Kernel\_MRxNR.

**Homework 2.4.2.1** In Figure 2.14, we give an IJP loop ordering around the computation of  $C_{i,j} := A_{i,p}B_{p,j} + C_{i,j}$ , which itself is implemented by `GemmIJP_JI_Kernel_MRxNR`. It can be found in

```
WeekC/C/GemmIJP_JI_Kernel_MRxNR.c.
```

executed by typing

```
make test_GemmIJP_JI_Kernel_MRxNR
```

in that directory. The resulting performance can be viewed with Live Script `WeekC/C>ShowPerformance mlx`. Modify it to implement your choice of kernel (meaning you can pick  $m_R$  and  $n_R$ ). Next, modify it to use the kernel you wrote for Homework ??.

• SEE ANSWER

The performance attained by our implementation is shown in Figure 2.11 (top-right).

We illustrate the computation with one set of three submatrices (one per matrix  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ ) in Figure 2.13 for the case where  $m_R = n_R = 4$  and  $m_c = n_c = k_c = 4m_R$ . What we notice is that the  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrices of  $C_{i,j}$  are not reused once updated. This means that at any given time only one such matrix needs to be in the cache memory. Similarly, a panel of  $B_{p,j}$  is not reused and hence only one such panel needs to be in cache. It is submatrix  $A_{i,p}$  that must remain in cache during the entire computation. By not keeping the entire submatrices  $C_{i,j}$  and  $B_{p,j}$  in the cache memory, the size of the submatrix  $A_{i,p}$  can be increased, which can be expected to improve performance.

To summarize, our insights suggest

1. Bring an  $m_c \times k_c$  submatrix of  $A$  into the cache memory, at a cost of  $m_c \times k_c$  memops. This cost is amortized over  $2m_c n_c k_c$  flops for a ratio of  $2m_c n_c k_c / (m_c k_c) = 2n_c$ . The larger  $n_c$ , the better.
2. The cost of reading an  $k_c \times n_R$  submatrix of  $B$  is amortized over  $2m_c n_R k_c$  flops, for a ratio of  $2m_c n_R k_c / (2m_c n_R) = m_c$ . Obviously, the greater  $m_c$ , the better.
3. The cost of reading and writing an  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrix of  $C$  is now amortized over  $2m_R n_R k_c$  flops, for a ratio of  $2m_R n_R k_c / (2m_R n_R) = k_c$ . Obviously, the greater  $k_c$ , the better.

Items 2 and 3 suggest that  $m_c \times k_c$  submatrix  $A_{i,p}$  be roughly square.

If we revisit the performance data plotted in Figure 2.2.3.2, we point out that performance starts to first drop when  $m = n = k = 128$ . Storing *one* matrix of size  $128 \times 128$  requires 128Kbytes, which is exactly half the size of the L2 cache for a Haswell core. Our discussion about how only one matrix block needs to be stored in “the cache” explains why this was observed (given that a naive analysis would have suggested that three matrices need to remain in cache).

In our future discussions, we will use the following terminology:

- A  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrix of  $C$  that is being updated we will call a *micro-tile*.
- The  $m_R \times k_C$  submatrix of  $A$  and  $k_C \times n_R$  submatrix of  $B$  we will call *micro-panels*.
- The routine that updates a micro-tile by multiplying two micro-panels we will call the *micro-kernel*.

### 2.4.3 Blocking for multiple caches

We now describe one way for blocking for multiple levels of cache. While some details still remain, this brings us very close to how matrix-matrix multiplication is implemented in practice in libraries that are widely used.

Each nested box represents a single loop that partitions one of the three dimensions ( $m$ ,  $n$ , or  $k$ ). The submatrices  $C_{i,j}$ ,  $A_{i,p}$ , and  $B_{p,j}$  are those already discussed in Section 2.4.2.

- The roughly square matrix  $A_{i,p}$  is “placed” in the L2 cache. So, if data from  $A_{i,p}$  can be fetched from the L2 cache fast enough, it is better to place it there since there is an advantage to making  $m_c$  and  $k_c$  larger and the L2 cache is larger than the (somewhat small) L1 cache.
- Our analysis in Section 2.4.2 also suggests that  $k_c$  be chosen to be large. Since the submatrix  $B_{p,j}$  is reused multiple times for many iterations of the “fourth loop around the micro-kernel” it may be chosen so that  $k_c \times n_c$  submatrix  $B_{p,j}$  stays in the L3 cache.
- In this scheme, the  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrices of  $C_{i,j}$  end up in registers and the  $k_c \times n_R$  “micro-panel” of  $B_{p,j}$  ends up in the L1 cache.

Data in the L1 cache typically is also in the L2 and L3 caches. The update of the  $m_R \times n_R$  submatrix of  $C$  also brings that into the various caches. Thus, the described situation is similar to what we described in Section 2.4.2, where “the cache” discussed there corresponds to the L2 cache here. As our discussion proceeds, we will try to make this all more precise.

**Homework 2.4.3.2** Modify the code in Figure 2.14, so that it captures the algorithm in Figure 2.15.

- Copy the file `GemmIJP_JI_Kernel_MRxNR.c` into file `GemmXYZ_JI_Kernel_MRxNR.c` and modifying it appropriately, choosing XYZ to reflect the chosen loop ordering;
- Modify the `Makefile` appropriately.
- Execute!

You may want to pick a microkernel with a favorable  $m_R \times n_R$ . Try o You will want to play with the blocking sizes MC, NC, and KC in `GemmXYZ_JI_Kernel_MRxNR.c`.

SEE ANSWER

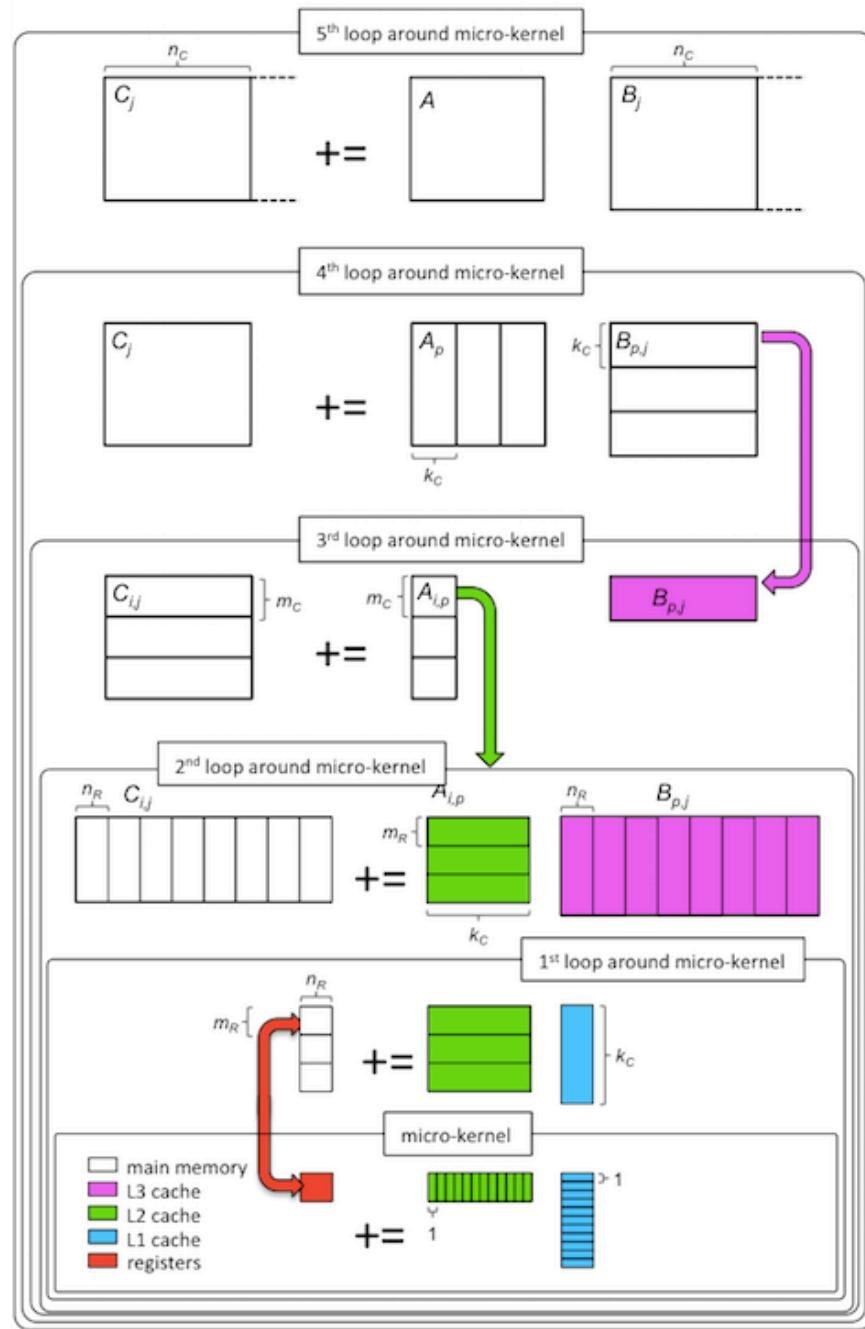


Figure 2.15: Blocking for multiple levels of cache.

## 2.5 Further Optimizing the Micro-kernel

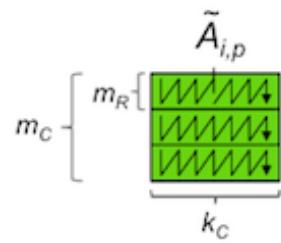
### 2.5.1 Packing

The next step towards optimizing the micro-kernel recognizes that computing with contiguous data (accessing data with a “stride one” access pattern) improves performance. In our prototypical example where the micro-tile is  $m_r \times n_r = 4 \times 4$ , the fact that this micro-tile is not in contiguous memory is not particularly important. The cost of bringing it into the vector registers from some layer in the memory is mostly inconsequential. It is the repeated accessing of the elements of  $A$  and  $B$  that can benefit from stride one access.

Two successive rank-1 updates of the micro-tile can be given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \gamma_{0,0} & \gamma_{0,1} & \gamma_{0,2} & \gamma_{0,3} \\ \gamma_{1,0} & \gamma_{1,1} & \gamma_{1,2} & \gamma_{0,3} \\ \gamma_{2,0} & \gamma_{2,1} & \gamma_{2,2} & \gamma_{0,3} \\ \gamma_{3,0} & \gamma_{3,1} & \gamma_{3,2} & \gamma_{0,3} \end{pmatrix} + := \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,p} \\ \alpha_{1,p} \\ \alpha_{2,p} \\ \alpha_{3,p} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta_{p,0} & \beta_{p,1} & \beta_{p,2} & \beta_{p,3} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,p+1} \\ \alpha_{1,p+1} \\ \alpha_{2,p+1} \\ \alpha_{3,p+1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta_{p+1,0} & \beta_{p+1,1} & \beta_{p+1,2} & \beta_{p+1,3} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since  $A$  and  $B$  are stored with column-major order, the four elements of  $\alpha_{[0:3],p}$  are contiguous in memory, but they are (generally) not contiguous with  $\alpha_{[0:3],p+1}$ . Elements  $\beta_{p,[0:3]}$  are (generally) also not contiguous. The access pattern during the computation by the micro-kernel would be much more favorable if the  $A$  involved in the microkernel was packed in column-major order with leading dimension  $m_r$ :



and  $B$  was packed in row-major order with leading dimension  $n_r$ :

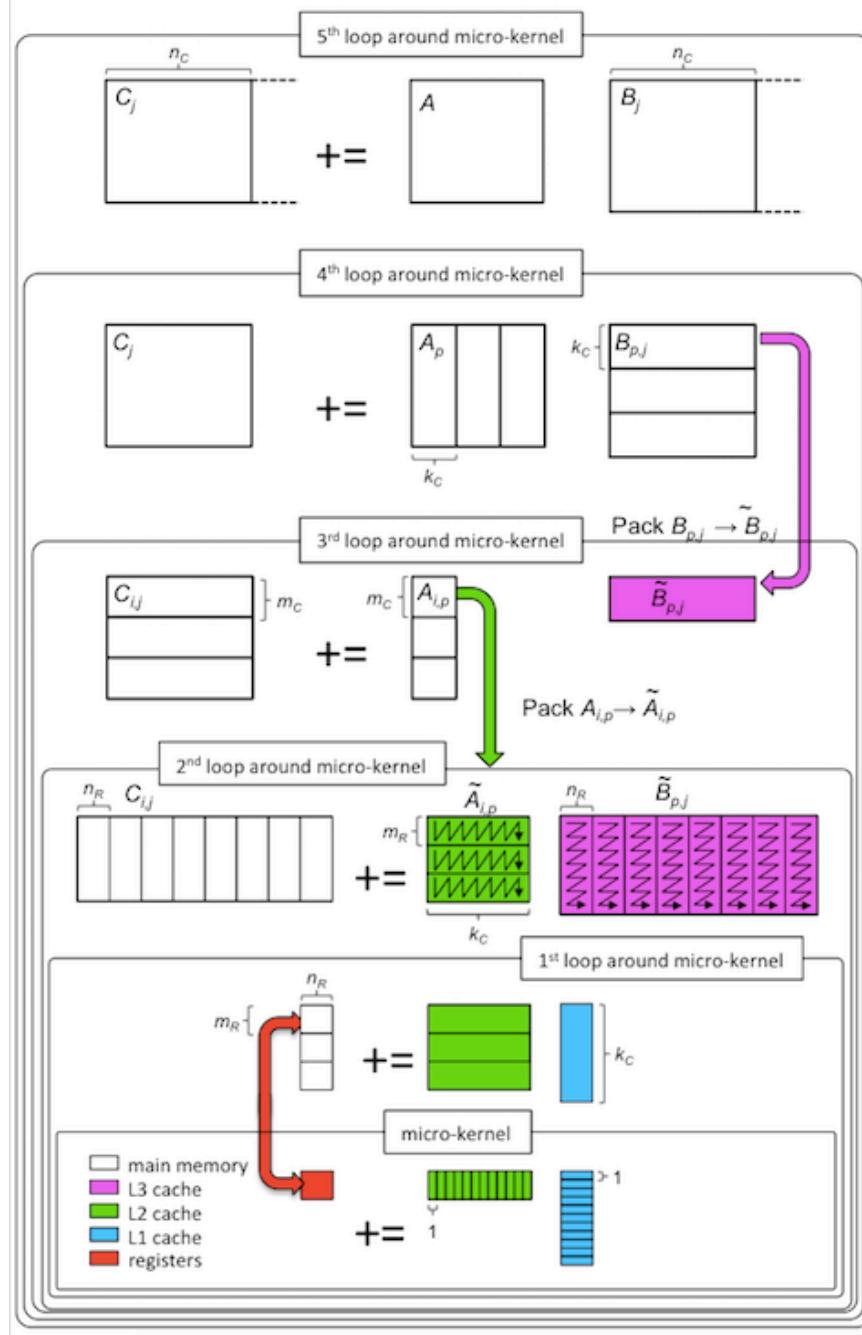


Figure 2.16: Blocking for multiple levels of cache, with packing. Picture adapted from []

```

void LoopFive( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int ldA,
               double *B, int ldb, double *C, int ldc )
{
    double *Atilde = ( double * ) malloc( MC * KC * sizeof( double ) );
    double *Btilde = ( double * ) malloc( KC * NC * sizeof( double ) );

    for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NC ) {
        int jb = min( NC, n-j ); /* Last loop may not involve a full block */
        LoopFour( m, jb, k, A, ldA, Atilde &beta( 0,j ), ldb, Btilde, &gamma( 0,j ), ldc );
    }
}

void LoopFour( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int ldA, double *Atilde,
               double *B, int ldb, double *Btilde, double *C, int ldc )
{
    for ( int p=0; p<k; p+=KC ) {
        int pb = min( KC, k-p ); /* Last loop may not involve a full block */
        PackPanelB_KCxNC( pb, n, &beta( p, 0 ), ldb, Btilde );
        LoopThree( m, n, pb, &alpha( 0, p ), ldA, Btilde, C, ldc );
    }
}

void LoopThree( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int ldA, double *Atilde,
                double *Btilde, double *C, int ldc )
{
    for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MC ) {
        int ib = min( MC, m-i ); /* Last loop may not involve a full block */
        PackBlockA_MCxKC( ib, k, &alpha( i, 0 ), ldA, Atilde );

        LoopTwo( ib, n, k, Atilde, Btilde, &gamma( i,0 ), ldc );
    }
}

void LoopTwo( int m, int n, int k, double *Atilde, double *Btilde, double *C, int ldc )
{
    for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NR ) {
        int jb = min( NR, n-j );
        LoopOne( m, jb, k, Atilde, &Btilde[ j*k ], &gamma( 0,j ), ldc );
    }
}

void LoopOne( int m, int n, int k, double *Atilde, double *MicroPanelB, double *C, int ldc )
{
    for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MR ) {
        int ib = min( MR, m-i );
        MicroKernel_MRxDNR( ib, n, k, &Atilde[ i*k ], MicroPanelB, &gamma( i,0 ), ldc );
    }
}

```

[github/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmFiveLoops.c](https://github.com/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmFiveLoops.c)

Figure 2.17: Blocking for multiple levels of cache, with packing.

```
void PackMicroPanelA_MRxCKC( int m, int k, double *A, int ldA, double *Atilde )
/* Pack a micro-panel of A into buffer pointed to by Atilde.
   This is an unoptimized implementation for general MR and KC. */
{
    /* March through A in column-major order, packing into Atilde as we go. */

    if ( m == MR )    /* Full row size micro-panel.*/
        for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ )
            for ( int i=0; i<MR; i++ )
                *Atilde++ = alpha( i, p );
    else /* Not a full row size micro-panel. We pad with zeroes. */
        for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ ) {
            for ( int i=0; i<m; i++ )
                *Atilde++ = alpha( i, p );
            for ( int i=m; i<MR; i++ )
                *Atilde++ = 0.0;
        }
    }

void PackBlockA_MCxKC( int m, int k, double *A, int ldA, double *Atilde )
/* Pack a MC x KC block of A. MC is assumed to be a multiple of MR. The block is packed
   into Atilde a micro-panel at a time. If necessary, the micro-panel is padded with rows
   of zeroes. */
{
    for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MR ){
        int ib = min( MR, m-i );

        PackMicroPanelA_MRxCKC( ib, k, &alpha( i, 0 ), ldA, Atilde );
        Atilde += MR * k;
    }
}
```

[github/LAFF–On–PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/Pack.c](https://github.com/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/tree/WeekB/C/Pack.c)

Figure 2.18: A reference implementation of routines for packing  $A_{i,p}$ .

```
void PackMicroPanelB_KCxNR( int k, int n, double *B, int ldb, double *Btilde )
/* Pack a micro-panel of B into buffer pointed to by Btilde.
   This is an unoptimized implementation for general KC and NR. */
{
    /* March through B in row-major order, packing into Btilde as we go. */

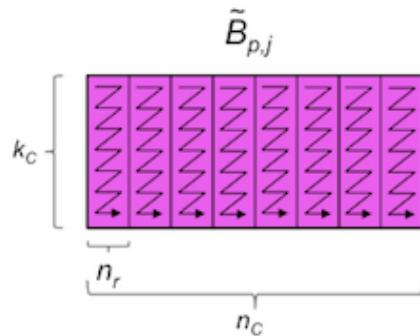
    if ( n == NR ) /* Full column width micro-panel.*/
        for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ )
            for ( int j=0; j<NR; j++ )
                *Btilde++ = beta( p, j );
    else /* Not a full row size micro-panel. We pad with zeroes. */
        for ( int p=0; p<k; p++ ) {
            for ( int j=0; j<n; j++ )
                *Btilde++ = beta( p, j );
            for ( int j=n; j<NR; j++ )
                *Btilde++ = 0.0;
        }
    }

void PackPanelB_KCxNC( int k, int n, double *B, int ldb, double *Btilde )
/* Pack a KC x NC panel of B. NC is assumed to be a multiple of NR. The
   block is packed into Btilde a micro-panel at a time. If necessary, the
   micro-panel is padded with columns of zeroes. */
{
    for ( int j=0; j<n; j+= NR ){
        int jb = min( NR, n-j );

        PackMicroPanelB_KCxNR( k, jb, &beta( 0, j ), ldb, Btilde );
        Btilde += k * jb;
    }
}
```

[github/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/Pack.c](https://github.com/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/Pack.c)

Figure 2.19: A reference implementation of routines for packing  $B_{p,j}$ .



If this packing were performed at a strategic point in the computation, so that the packing is amortized over many computations, then a benefit might result. These observations are captured in Figure 2.16 and translated into an implementation in Figure 2.17. Reference implementations of packing routines can be found in Figures 2.18 and 2.19. The (very modest) performance benefit is illustrated in Figure 2.11 (bottom-left). While these implementations can be optimized, the fact is that the cost when packing is in the data movement between main memory and faster memory. As a result, optimizing the packing has very little effect.

**Homework 2.5.1.3** • Copy the file `GemmFiveLoops_4x4.c` into file `GemmFiveLoops_??x???.c` where `??x???` reflects the  $m_r \times n_r$  kernel you developed before. Modify that file to use your kernel.

- Notice that you have to modify it because the data is now packed. Indeed, it may be easier to modify the  $m_r \times n_r = 4 \times 4$  kernel that is in `GemmFiveLoops_4x4.c` so that it works for the  $m_r \times n_r$  that was assigned to your project.
- Don't forget to modify MR and NR in the file!
- Modify the Makefile appropriately.
- Execute and view the performance graph.

SEE ANSWER

## 2.5.2 Further single core optimizations to try.

We now give a laundry list of further optimizations that can be tried.

**Different  $m_r \times n_r$  choices** As mentioned, there are many choices for  $m_r \times n_r$ . On the Haswell architecture, it has been suggested that  $12 \times 4$  or  $4 \times 12$  are good choices. The choice  $4 \times 12$  where elements of  $B$  are loaded into vector registers and elements of  $A$  are broadcast has some advantage.

**Prefetching.** Elements of  $A_{i,p}$  in theory remain in the L2 cache. Loading them into registers may be faster if they are prefetched into the L1 cache, overlapping that movement with computation.

There are intrinsic instructions for that. Some choices of  $m_r$  and  $n_r$  lend themselves better to exploiting this.

**Loop unrolling.** There is some overhead that comes from having a loop in the micro-kernel. That overhead is in part due to loop indexing and branching overhead. The loop also can get in the way of the explicitly reordering of operations towards some benefit. So, one could turn the loop into a long sequence of instructions. A compromise is to “unroll” it more modestly, decreasing the number of iterations while increasing the number of operations performed in each iteration.

**Different  $m_c$ ,  $n_c$  and/or  $k_c$  choices.** There may be a benefit to playing around with the various blocking parameters.

**Using in-lined assembly code** Even more control over where what happens from using in-lined assembly code. This will allow prefetching and how registers are used to be made more explicit. (The compiler often changes the order of the operations with intrinsics are used in C.)

**Placing a block of  $B$  in the L2 cache.** There is a symmetric way of blocking the various matrices that then places a block of  $B$  in the L2 cache. This has the effect of accessing  $C$  by rows, if  $C$  were accessed by columns before, and vice versa. For some choices of  $m_r \times n_r$ , this may show a benefit.

**Repeat for single precision!**

**Repeat for another architecture!**

**Repeat for other MMM-like operations!**

## 2.6 Multithreaded parallelization

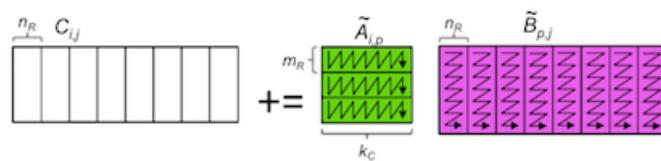
### 2.6.1 OpenMP

OpenMP is an Application Programming Interface (API) that allows one to communicate, partially to the compiler at compilation time and through a library of routines at execution time, how to achieve parallel execution. A good place to read up on OpenMP is, where else, Wikipedia: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/OpenMP>.

In this section, we illustrate how OpenMP works by parallelizing our matrix-matrix multiplication implementations.

### 2.6.2 Parallelizing the second loop around the micro-kernel

Let's dive right in and parallelize one of the loops. We flipped a coin and it is the second loop around the micro-kernel that we are going to discuss first:



implemented by

```
void LoopTwo( int m, int n, int k, double *Atilde, double *Btilde, double *C, int ldc )
{
    for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NR ) {
        int jb = min( NR, n-j );
        LoopOne( m, jb, k, Atilde, &Btilde[ j*k ], &gamma( 0,j ), ldc );
    }
}
```

[github/LAFF-ON-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmFiveLoops.c](https://github.com/LLNL/LAFF-ON-PfHPC/blob/master/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmFiveLoops.c)

What we want to express is that each threads will perform a subset of multiplications of the submatrix  $\tilde{A}_{i,p}$  times the micro-panels of  $\tilde{B}_{p,j}$ . Each should perform a roughly equal part of the necessary computation. This is indicated by inserting a *pragma*, a directive to the compiler:

```
#pragma omp parallel for
for ( int j=0; j<n; j+=NR ) {
    int jb = min( NR, n-j );
    LoopOne( m, jb, k, Atilde, &Btilde[ j*k ], &gamma( 0,j ), ldc );
}
```

To compile this, we must add `-fopenmp` to the `CFLAGS` in the makefile. Next, at execution time, you will want to indicate how many threads to use during the execution. First, to find out how many cores are available, you may want to execute

```
$ lscpu
```

which, on the machine where I tried it, yields

```
Architecture:           x86_64
CPU op-mode(s):        32-bit, 64-bit
Byte Order:            Little Endian
CPU(s):                20
On-line CPU(s) list:  0-19
Thread(s) per core:   2
Core(s) per socket:   10
Socket(s):             1
NUMA node(s):          1
Vendor ID:             GenuineIntel
CPU family:            6
Model:                 63
Model name:            Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E5-2650 v3 @ 2.30GHz
Stepping:               2
CPU MHz:               1326.273
CPU max MHz:           3000.0000
CPU min MHz:           1200.0000
BogoMIPS:              4594.96
Virtualization:        VT-x
L1d cache:             32K
L1i cache:             32K
L2 cache:               256K
L3 cache:               25600K
NUMA node0 CPU(s):    0-19
```

and some additional information. What this tells us is that there are 10 cores, with two threads possible per core (this is called *hyperthreading*). On a mac you may want to try executing

```
$ sysctl -n hw.physicalcpu
```

instead. If you are using the BASH shell for Linux<sup>1</sup>, you may then want to indicate, for example, that you want to use four threads:

```
$ export OMP_NUM_THREADS=4
```

---

<sup>1</sup>If you use a C-shell, the command is `setenv OMP_NUM_THREADS 4`.

After you have added the directive to your code, compile it and execute.

**Homework 2.6.2.4** So far, you have optimized your choice of MMM in file GemmFiveLoops\_??x??.c where ??x?? reflects the register blocking for your micro-kernel. At this time, your implementation targets a single core. For the remainder of the exercises, you will start with *out* optimization for the case where  $m_r \times n_r = 12 \times 4$ . Now, in directory Nov14,

- Start with `Gemm_Parallel_Loop2_12x4.c`, in which you will find our implementation for a single core with  $m_r \times n_r = 12 \times 4$ .
- Modify it as described in this unit to parallelize Loop 2 around the micro-kernel.
- Set the number of threads to some number between 1 and the number of CPUs in the target processor.
- Execute `make test_Gemm_Parallel_Loop2_12x4`.
- View the resulting performance with `make ShowPerformance.mlx`.
- Be sure to check if you got the right answer!
- How does performance improve relative to the number of threads you indicated should be used?

 SEE ANSWER

### 2.6.3 Parallelizing the first loop around the micro-kernel

One can similarly optimize the first loop around the micro-kernel:

**Homework 2.6.3.5** In directory Nov14,

- Copy Gemm\_Parallel\_Loop2\_12x4.c into Gemm\_Parallel\_Loop1\_12x4.c.
- Modify it so that only the first loop around the micro-kernel is parallelized.
- Set the number of threads to some number between 1 and the number of CPUs in the target processor.
- Execute make test\_Gemm\_Parallel\_Loop1\_12x4.
- View the resulting performance with make ShowPerformance.mlx, uncommenting the appropriate lines. (You should be able to do this so that you see previous performance curves as well.)
- Be sure to check if you got the right answer!
- How does the performance improve relative to the number of threads being used?

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

## 2.6.4 Parallelizing the third loop around the micro-kernel

One can similarly optimize the third loop around the micro-kernel:

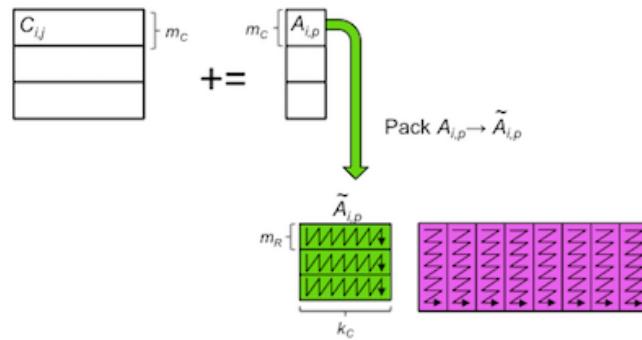
**Homework 2.6.4.6** In directory Nov14,

- Copy Gemm\_Parallel\_Loop2\_12x4.c into Gemm\_Parallel\_Loop3\_12x4.c.
- Modify it so that only the third loop around the micro-kernel is parallelized.
- Set the number of threads to some number between 1 and the number of CPUs in the target processor.
- Execute make test\_Gemm\_Parallel\_Loop3\_12x4.
- View the resulting performance with make ShowPerformance.mlx, uncommenting the appropriate lines.
- Be sure to check if you got the right answer! This actually is trickier than you might at first think!

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

**Observations.**

- Parallelizing the third loop is a bit trickier. Likely, you started by inserting the #pragma statement and got the wrong answer. The problem is that you are now parallelizing



implemented by

```
void LoopThree( int m, int n, int k, double *A, int lda, double *Atilde,
    double *Btilde, double *C, int ldc )
{
    for ( int i=0; i<m; i+=MC ) {
        int ib = min( MC, m-i ); /* Last loop may not involve a full block */
        PackBlockA_MCxKC( ib, k, &alpha( i, 0 ), lda, Atilde );

        LoopTwo( ib, n, k, Atilde, Btilde, &gamma( i, 0 ), ldc );
    }
}
```

[github/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmFiveLoops.c](https://github.com/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmFiveLoops.c)

The problem with a naive parallelization is that all threads pack their block of  $A$  into the same buffer  $\tilde{A}$ . There are two solutions to this:

- Quick and dirty: allocate and free a new buffer in this loop, so that each iteration, and hence each thread, gets a different buffer.
- Cleaner: In Loop 5 around the micro-kernel, we currently allocate one buffer for  $\tilde{A}$ :

```
double *Atilde = ( double * ) malloc( MC * KC * sizeof( double ) );
```

[github/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmFiveLoops.c](https://github.com/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekB/C/GemmFiveLoops.c)

What one could do is to allocate a larger buffer here, enough for as many blocks  $\tilde{A}$  as there are threads, and then in the third loop around the micro-kernel one can index into this larger buffer to give each thread its own space. For this, one needs to know about a few OpenMP inquiry routines:

- \* `omp_get_num_threads()` returns the number of threads being used in a parallel section.
- \* `omp_get_thread_num()` returns the thread number of the thread that calls it.

Now, this is all a bit tricky, because `omp_get_num_threads()` returns the number of threads being used only in a parallel section. So, to allocate enough space, one would try to change the code in Loop 5 to

```
double *Atilde;

#pragma omp parallel
{
    if (omp_get_thread_num() == 0)
        malloc( MC * NC * sizeof( double ) * omp_get_num_threads() );
}
```

Here the curly brackets indicate the scope of the parallel section.

The call to `free` must then be correspondingly modified so that only thread 0 releases the buffer.

Now, in Loop 2, one can index into this larger buffer.

### 2.6.5 Speedup, efficiency, and Ahmdahl's law

Amdahl's law is a simple observation regarding how much speedup can be expected when one parallelizes a code. First some definitions.

**Sequential time.** The *sequential time* for an operation is given by

$$T(n),$$

where  $n$  is a parameter that captures the size of the problem being solved. It is equal the time required to compute the operation on a single core. It is implicitly assumed that the implementation is the fastest implementation for a single core.

**Parallel time.** The *parallel time* for an operation and a given implementation using  $t$  threads is given by

$$T_t(n).$$

**Speedup.** The *speedup* for an operation and a given implementation using  $t$  threads is given by

$$T(n)/T_t(n).$$

It measures how much speedup is attained by using  $t$  threads. Generally speaking, it is assumed that

$$S_t(n) = T(n)/T_t(n) \leq t.$$

This is not always the case: sometimes  $t$  threads collective have resources (e.g., more cache memory) that allows speedup to exceed  $t$ . Think of the case where you make a bed with one person versus two people: You can often finish the job more than twice as fast because two people do not need to walk back and forth from one side of the bed to the other.

**Efficiency.** The *efficiency* for an operation and a given implementation using  $t$  threads is given by

$$S_t(n)/t.$$

It measures how much efficiently the  $t$  threads are being used.

**GFLOPS.** We like to report GFLOPS (billions of floating point operations per second). Notice that this gives us an easy way of judging efficiency: If we know what the theoretical peak of a processor is, in terms of GFLOPS, then we can easily judge how efficiently we are using the processor relative to the theoretical peak. How do we compute the theoretical peak? We can look up the number of cycles a core can perform per second and the number of floating point operations it can perform per cycle. This can then be converted to a peak rate of computation for a single core (in billions of floating point operations per second). If there are multiple cores, we just multiply this peak by the number of cores.

**Ahmdahl's law.** Ahmdahl's law is a simple observation about the limits on parallel speed and efficiency. Consider an operation that requires sequential time

$$T$$

for computation. What if fraction  $f$  of this time is **not** parallelized, and the other fraction  $(1 - f)$  is parallelized with  $t$  threads. Then the total execution time is

$$T_t \geq (1 - f)T/t + fT.$$

This, in turn, means that the speedup is bounded by

$$S \leq \frac{T}{(1 - f)T/t + fT}.$$

Now, even if the parallelization with  $t$  threads is such that the fraction that is being parallelized takes no time at all ( $(1 - f)T/t = 0$ ), then we still find that

$$S \leq \frac{T}{(1 - f)T/t + fT} \leq \frac{T}{fT} = \frac{1}{f}.$$

What we notice is that the maximal speedup is bounded by the inverse of the fraction of the execution time that is not parallelized. So, if 20% of the code is not optimized, then no matter how many threads you use, you can at best compute the result five times faster. This means that one must think about parallelizing all significant parts of a code.

Ahmdahl's law says that if does not parallelize the part of a sequential code in which fraction  $f$  time is spent, then the speedup attained regardless of how many threads are used is bounded by  $1/f$ .

The point is: So far, we have focused on parallelizing the computational part of MMM. We should also parallelize the packing, since that is a nontrivial part of the total execution time.

## 2.6.6 Optimizing the packing

Some observations:

- If you choose to parallelize Loop 3 around the micro-kernel, then the packing into  $\tilde{A}$  is already parallelized, since each thread packs its own such block. So, you will want to parallelize the packing of  $\tilde{B}$ .
- If you choose to parallelize Loop 2 around the micro-kernel, you will also want to parallelize the packing of  $\tilde{A}$ .
- Be careful: we purposely wrote the routines that pack  $\tilde{A}$  and  $\tilde{B}$  so that a naive parallelization will give the wrong answer. Analyze carefully what happens when multiple threads execute the loop...

## 2.6.7 Overlapping data movement with computation

The next observation is that one may want to overlap the movement of data between memory layers. This is accomplished through *prefetching* of data. Prefetching (or, rather, preloading) into registers is not a simple matter: The  $m_r \times n_r = 12 \times 4$  kernel already uses all sixteen vector registers.

The fundamental tools for preloading is the prefetch instructions:

```
// prefetch cache line that includes the address pntr to L1 cache
_mm_prefetch( pntr, 0 )

// prefetch cache line that includes the address pntr to L2 cache
_mm_prefetch( pntr, 1 )

// prefetch cache line that includes the address pntr to L2 or L3 cache
_mm_prefetch( pntr, 2 )
```

It is important to replace the allocation routines `malloc` and `free` with `_mm_malloc` and `_mm_free`, respectively, to ensure that data is properly aligned in memory.

Some things to try. You probably want to do this for one core first, before you move on to multiple cores.

- Before computing the update of the  $m_r \times n_r$  micro-tile with the micro-kernel, prefetch the next micro-tile to the L3 cache.

- As you compute with the current micro-panel of  $\tilde{A}$ , prefetch the next micro-panel of  $\tilde{A}$  into the appropriate cache level.
- As you compute with the current micro-panel of  $\tilde{B}$ , prefetch the next micro-panel of  $\tilde{B}$  into the appropriate cache level. Notice that for the entire execution of Loop 1, the same micro-panel of  $\tilde{B}$  is used. So, you want to be selective as to what you prefetch.

## 2.7 Enrichment

## 2.8 Wrapup



Week **3**

## **Message-Passing Interface Basics**

### **3.1 Opener**

#### **3.1.1 Launch**

### 3.1.2 Outline Week 3

<b>3.1. Opener</b> . . . . .	<b>87</b>
3.1.1. Launch . . . . .	87
3.1.2. Outline Week 3 . . . . .	88
3.1.3. What you will learn . . . . .	89
<b>3.2. MPI Basics</b> . . . . .	<b>90</b>
3.2.1. Programming distributed memory architectures . . . . .	90
3.2.2. MPI: Managing processes . . . . .	90
3.2.3. Sending and receiving . . . . .	93
3.2.4. Cost of sending/receiving a message . . . . .	96
<b>3.3. Collective Communication</b> . . . . .	<b>97</b>
3.3.1. MPI_Bcast . . . . .	97
3.3.2. Minimum spanning tree broadcast (MST Broadcast) . . . . .	98
3.3.3. Can we do better yet? . . . . .	102
3.3.4. Various collective communications . . . . .	102
<b>3.4. More Algorithms for Collective Communication</b> . . . . .	<b>106</b>
3.4.1. Minimum Spanning Tree scatter and gather algorithms . . . . .	106
3.4.2. MST broadcast and reduce(-to-one) . . . . .	110
3.4.3. Bucket allgather and reduce-scatter . . . . .	111
<b>3.5. A Calculus of Collective Communication</b> . . . . .	<b>115</b>
3.5.1. The short vector case . . . . .	115
3.5.2. Leveraging ready-send for composed short-vector algorithms . . . . .	116
3.5.3. The long vector case . . . . .	117
3.5.4. Viewing the processes as a higher dimensional mesh . . . . .	117
3.5.5. From short vector to long vector . . . . .	121
<b>3.6. Enrichment</b> . . . . .	<b>122</b>
<b>3.7. Wrapup</b> . . . . .	<b>122</b>

### **3.1.3 What you will learn**

## 3.2 MPI Basics

### 3.2.1 Programming distributed memory architectures

These days, the fastest computers in the world are composed of many individual computers, referred to as (computational) nodes, that can communicate through some high bandwidth interconnection network. Each individual node typically consists of a processor with multiple cores, and may have additional high-performance hardware in form of an accelerator like a GPU. We will not further concern ourselves with accelerators, mostly discussing nodes in a relatively abstract way.

To keep the cost of such architectures reasonable, each node is an off-the shelf computer, with its own CPU and memory hierarchy. In other words, each node looks very much like the processors for which you optimized MMM, in prior weeks of this course. Each node is therefore programmed as if it is a separate computer. This model of programming is known as *Multiple Instruction-Multiple Data*, since each node executes its own instruction stream, on data that is stored only in its memory. If data from other nodes is needed, then that data needs to be explicitly communicated between the nodes.

Given that a modern super computer may consist of tens of thousands or even hundreds of thousands of nodes, writing an individual program for each is obviously daunting. For this reason, one tends to write a single program, a copy of which executes on each node. This is known as the *Single Program-Multiple Data* (SPMD) paradigm of parallel programming.

Now, running the exact same program on thousands of nodes is obviously not interesting. What actually is done is that each node is given identifier so that its path through the program depends on that identifier. This also allows a node to communicate data to another node by identifier if data has to be shared.

Since the mid-1990s, SPMD programming is facilitated by a standardized interface, the *Message-Passing Interface* (MPI). While the latest standard (and even the first one) includes a vast number of routines and functionality, one fortunately only needs to know a few to get started.

### 3.2.2 MPI: Managing processes

MPI views the computation as being performed by a collection of *processes*. A particular node may host one or more such processes. The processes do not migrate between nodes. From a programming point of view, the processes have their separate memory spaces. Thus, from a programming point of view, they might as well be on separate nodes since even processes on the same node cannot access each other's data directly.

Let us start with the customary “Hello World” program in Figure 3.1. Normally, this would be compiled with a C compiler, say `gcc`

```
% gcc HelloWorld.c -o HelloWorld.x
```

and then executed:

```
% ./HelloWorld.x
```

which should yield the output

---

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main(int argc, char** argv) {
    printf ("Hello World!\n" );
}
```

github/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/HelloWorld.c

Figure 3.1: Simple “Hello World!” program.

Hello World!

if all goes well.

At this point, you have a program that executes on one processor. To make it into a program that executes on many MPI processes, you compile with `mpicc`, which is just a convenient way of using your default compiler, but linking in MPI libraries and functionality.

```
% mpicc HelloWorld.c -o HelloWorld.x
```

To execute the result, type

```
% mpirun -np 4 HelloWorld.x
```

which creates four MPI processes on your computer, thus sort of simulating four compute nodes, and runs the program with each of the processes, yielding the output

```
Hello World!
Hello World!
Hello World!
Hello World!
```

Welcome to your first MPI program! Notice that we are actually simulating a distributed memory computer by running multiple processes on one processor, namely the computer on which you are compiling and executing. However, this is a convenient environment in which to first learn about MPI.

Now, redundantly executing the same program with the same data on multiple processes is rarely productive. Our kind of parallel computing is typically about using multiple processes to more quickly complete a single task.

To be able to take “a different execution path through the same program,” a process is assigned a process number from 0 to `nprocs` where `nprocs` equals the number of processes indicated with the `-np` runtime parameter passed to `mpirun`. To be able to access that information, we need to add some commands to our simple program as shown in Figure 3.2. There

```
#include <mpi.h>
```

---

pulls in the MPI header file.

```
#include <mpi.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main(int argc, char** argv)
{
    int nprocs, me, left, right;

    /* Extract MPI runtime parameters and update argc and argv
       leaving the other runtime parameters. */
    MPI_Init( &argc, &argv );

    /* Extract the number of processes */
    MPI_Comm_size( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &nprocs );

    /* Extract the rank of this process */
    MPI_Comm_rank( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &me );

    /* Hello! */
    printf( "Hello World from %d of %d processes\n", me, nprocs );

    /* Clean up the MPI environment. */
    MPI_Finalize();
}
```

github/LAFF–On–PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/HelloWorld2.c

Figure 3.2: Simple “Hello World!” program.

```
MPI_Init( &argc, &argv );
```

initializes the MPI environment, using the run time parameters passed to `mpirun`. It then strips out those run time parameters, leaving any additional run time parameters that are to be passed to the program. Eventually

```
MPI_Finalize();
```

“finalizes” the environment.

MPI employs *object based* programming, which encapsulates detailed information in **opaque data types** (objects), thus hiding intricate details. One important data type is the *communicator*, which encodes information about the group of processes that are involved in a communication between processes. As time goes on, how that fits into the picture will become clear. In our simple program, we only encounter the predefined `MPI_COMM_WORLD` communicator, which describes all processes created when `mpirun` is executed.

Inquiry routines are used to extract information from a communicator.

```
MPI_Comm_size( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &nprocs );
```

sets integer nprocs to the number of processes while

```
MPI_Comm_rank( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &me );
```

sets integer me to the rank of the calling process within MPI\_COMM\_WORLD. As you program, you will want to constantly ask “if this process has rank me, what computation should it perform?” In other words, me and nprocs will determine what path through the program will be taken by the process. In the case of this simple program, each process performs a slightly different computation, namely it prints out its rank. When executed with

```
mpicc HelloWorld2.c -o HelloWorld2.x  
mpirun -np 4 ./HelloWorld2.x
```

The output might be

```
Hello World from 2 of 4 processes  
Hello World from 0 of 4 processes  
Hello World from 3 of 4 processes  
Hello World from 1 of 4 processes
```

which illustrates that the order in which computation happens is not predetermined.

### 3.2.3 Sending and receiving

Let’s see how we can force the results to be printed in order. There are simpler ways of doing this that presented here. However, the way we proceed allows us to illustrate simple sending and receiving calls.

Here is the idea: Each process with rank  $i$  will wait for a message from the process with rank  $i - 1$ , except for the process with rank 0. Process 0 prints its message and then sends a message to process 1. This way each process  $i$  waits for the message from process  $i - 1$ , prints its message, and then send a message to process  $i + 1$ , except for the last such process.

This means replacing

```
printf( "Hello World from %d of %d processes\n", me, nprocs );
```

with

```
if ( me > 0 )  
    MPI_Recv( &token, 1, MPI_INT, me-1, MPI_ANY_TAG, MPI_COMM_WORLD, &status );  
  
printf( "Hello World from %d of %d processes\n", me, nprocs );  
fflush( stdout );
```

```
if ( me < nprocs-1 )
    MPI_Send( &token, 1, MPI_INT, me+1, 0, MPI_COMM_WORLD );
```

and adding the declarations

```
int token = 1;
MPI_Status status;
```

(Obviously, token can be initialized to any value. It is merely data to be passed around. Any data would work.) Take a moment to look at the piece of code. To create it (or interpret it), you need to think “if I am process me, what should I do?” The answer is

- If I am not the first process ( $me > 0$ ) then I should wait for a message from the process to my left ( $me-1$ ).

```
if ( me > 0 )
    MPI_Recv( &token, 1, MPI_INT, me-1, MPI_ANY_TAG, MPI_COMM_WORLD, &status );
```

- Once I receive the message, it is my turn to print.

```
printf( "Hello World from %d of %d processes\n", me, nprocs );
fflush( stdout );
```

The call to fflush is required because output is typically send to process 0 for printing. Without the fflush() it might be buffered by the process that just called printf, which then could result in the printed messages still being out of order.

- Once I have printed the message, I need to pass the token to the next process,  $me+1$ , if there is such a process.

```
if ( me < nprocs-1 )
    MPI_Send( &token, 1, MPI_INT, me+1, 0, MPI_COMM_WORLD );
```

As long as you can learn to reason this way, putting yourself in the place of process  $me$ , message-passing programming is relatively straight forward.

**Homework 3.2.3.1** Copy HelloWorld2.c into HelloWorld3.c and modify it according to the above description, passing messages to ensure that the output is serialized. Compile it, and execute it!

SEE ANSWER

The above illustrates the use of the simplest MPI send routine:

```
int MPI_Send( void *buff, int count, MPI_Datatype datatype,
              int dest, int tag, MPI_Comm comm )
```

Here

- `buff` is the address where the data that is communicated is stored.
- `count` equals the number of items to be sent.
- `datatype` is a descriptor for the data type of each item. Commonly used are `MPI_INT` (integer), `MPI_CHAR` (character), and `MPI_DOUBLE` (double precision floating point). One can also custom create so-called *derived* data types, but that goes beyond this course.
- `dest` is the rank of the destination process, relative to the communicator given in `comm`.
- `tag` is a message tag that can be used to distinguish between multiple messages that are sent to the process `dest`.
- `comm` is the communicator that describes the group of processes involved in the communication, of which the sending receiving processes are part.

The simplest receive routine is given by

```
int MPI_Recv( void *buff, int count, MPI_Datatype datatype,
              int src, int tag, MPI_Comm comm, MPI_Status *status )
```

Here

- `buff` is the address where the data that is communicated is received.
- `count` equals the *maximum* number of items that can be received.
- `datatype` is a descriptor for the data type of each item.
- `src` is the rank of the source process, relative to the communicator given in `comm`.
- `tag` is a message tag that can be used to distinguish between multiple messages that are sent to the process.
- `comm` is the communicator that describes the group of processes involved in the communication, of which the sending receiving processes are part.
- `status` is an object that holds information about the received message, including, for example, its actually count.

For both, the return value should be `MPI_SUCCESS` if all went well.

It is important to realize how these operations proceed. The specification for `MPI_Send` says that the operation *may* block execution of the source process until a corresponding `MPI_Recv` happens on the receiving process. The specification for `MPI_Recv` says that the operation *will* block execution of the receiving process. Some scenarios:

---

- The MPI\_Send is executed before the MPI\_Recv happens on the receiving process. In this case *either* the call to MPI\_Send blocks until the receive is posted *or* the message is stored (by the sending or receiving process) to be later matches with the receive. In this second case, the sending process can proceed with its execution.

How these operations satisfy this specification depends on the implementation of MPI. The reason why MPI\_Send *may* block is that this avoids the problem of there not being enough temporary space for the message to be temporarily stored “in flight.”

Notice that if the message is temporarily stored, then an extra memory-to-memory copy of the data is incurred along the way.

- The MPI\_Send is executed after the MPI\_Recv is posted. A reasonable MPI implementation would receive the data directly into the buffer specified in the MPI\_Recv call. This would usually mean that the communication incurs lower overhead.

### 3.2.4 Cost of sending/receiving a message

We will adopt the following model for the cost of sending  $n$  items between two processes:

$$\alpha + n\beta,$$

where

- $\alpha$  equals the *latency*: the time (in seconds) for the processes to connect.
- $\beta$  is the cost per item in seconds (the inverse of the bandwidth).

This model is remarkably accurate even for machines with a very large number of nodes.

One may wonder whether this model shouldn’t take into account the distance between the two nodes on which the processes exist. The latency ( $\alpha$  term) is not particularly sensitive to this distance because the cost of initiating the message is mostly on the sending and receiving side. Forwarding the message in the network is supported by very fast hardware. It is the software overhead on the sending and receiving sides that is more significant. The bandwidth ( $\beta$ ) term is not particularly affected by the distance because messages are pipelined.

Let’s make this a little clearer. Let’s say that a vector  $x$  of  $n$  items is to be communicated between two nodes. Let’s for simplicity sake assume that to get from the sending node to the receiving node, the message has to be forwarded by  $d - 1$  nodes in between, so that the two nodes are a “distance”  $d$  apart. It would seem like the message is then sent from the sending nodes to the first node along the way, at a cost of  $\alpha + n\beta$ . To send it to the next node would be another  $\alpha + n\beta$ , and so forth. The total cost would be  $d(\alpha + n\beta)$ , which would typically be much greater than  $\alpha + n\beta$ .

Now, what if one breaks the message into  $k$  equally sized packets. In a first step, the first packet would be sent from the sending node to the first intermediate node, taking  $\alpha + n/k\beta$ . As this gets passed along to the next node, the sending process can send the next packet. It takes  $d(\alpha + n/k\beta)$

time for the first packet to reach the final destination, and then another  $(k - 1)(\alpha + n/k\beta)$  time for the final packet to arrive. So the total cost is

$$(d+k-1)\left(\alpha + \frac{n}{k}\beta\right) = (d+k-1)\alpha + \frac{d_k-1}{k}\beta.$$

If  $k$  is very large compared to  $d$ , then we get, approximately

$$(d+k-1)\left(\alpha + \frac{n}{k}\beta\right) = (d+k-1)\alpha + \frac{d+k-1}{k}n\beta \approx (d+k-1)\alpha + n\beta.$$

Now, the fact is that a modern network that connects nodes automatically forward messages within the communication network, rather than explicitly involving the nodes in between. So, one should really think of the steps along the way as the initiation of the communication , at a cost of  $\alpha$ , and then a cost of forwarding the message within the network that involves a much smaller latency,  $\alpha_{\text{net}}$ . The total cost then resembles more

$$\alpha + (d+k-1)\alpha_{\text{net}} + n\beta.$$

In practice,  $\alpha$  is many orders of magnitude greater than  $\alpha_{\text{net}}$ , and therefore a reasonable approximation becomes

$$\alpha + n\beta.$$

### 3.3 Collective Communication

#### 3.3.1 MPI\_Bcast

It is a frequently encountered situation where one process, often process 0, reads data that is then shared with all other processes. A naive implementation of this is given in Figure 3.3.

Now, if that number of data being shared with all other processes is large and/or the number of processes being used is large, then sending individual messages to all other processes may become time consuming. Also, sharing data that is on one process, the root, with all other processes is a common operation. Perhaps it should be a primitive for broadcasting as part of MPI. Indeed, there is:

```
int MPI_Bcast( void *buff, int count, MPI_Datatype datatype,
                int root, MPI_Comm comm )
```

Here

- `buff` is the address where the data to be send/received is stored. On the root process, it is the address where data to be communicated is stored. On the other processes, it is where the data is to be received.
- `count` equals the *maximum* number of items being communicated.
- `datatype` is a descriptor for the data type of each item.

```

#include <mpi.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main(int argc, char** argv)
{
    int nprocs, me, dest, my_number=999, incoming=-999;
    MPI_Status status;

    MPI_Init( &argc, &argv );

    MPI_Comm_size( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &nprocs );
    MPI_Comm_rank( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &me );

    if ( me == 0 ){
        printf( "Input an integer:" );
        scanf( "%d", &my_number );

        /* send to all other processes */
        for ( dest=1; dest<nprocs; dest++ )
            MPI_Send( &my_number, 1, MPI_INT, dest, 0, MPI_COMM_WORLD );
    }
    else
        MPI_Recv( &incoming, 1, MPI_INT, 0, 0, MPI_COMM_WORLD );

    printf( "me = %d, my_message = %d, incoming = %d\n", me, my_message, incoming );

    MPI_Finalize();
}

```

[github/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/bcast1.c](https://github.com/LLNL/LAFF-On-PfHPC/blob/master/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/bcast1.c)

Figure 3.3: Process zero reads and duplicates to all other processes.

- root is the rank of the sending process, relative to the communicator given in comm.
- comm is the communicator that describes the group of processes involved in the communication, of which the sending receiving processes are part.

The operation is synchronous: all processes have to call it for it to complete successfully. With this, we can recode the example in Figure 3.3 as given in Figure 3.4.

### 3.3.2 Minimum spanning tree broadcast (MST Bcast)

Let us now discuss how to implement an efficient broadcast algorithm. We will illustrate this by implementing a routine

```

int My_Bcast( void *buff, int count, MPI_Datatype datatype,
              int root, MPI_Comm comm )

```

```

#include <mpi.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main(int argc, char** argv)
{
    int nprocs, me, dest, my_number=999, incoming=-999;
    MPI_Status status;

    MPI_Init( &argc, &argv );

    MPI_Comm_size( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &nprocs );
    MPI_Comm_rank( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &me );

    if ( me == 0 ){
        printf( "Input an integer:" );
        scanf( "%d", &my_number );

        MPI_Bcast( &my_number, 1, MPI_INT, 0, MPI_COMM_WORLD );
    }
    else
        MPI_Bcast( &incoming, 1, MPI_INT, 0, MPI_COMM_WORLD );

    printf( "me = %d, my_message = %d, incoming = %d\n", me, my_message, incoming );
    MPI_Finalize();
}

```

[github/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/bcast2.c](https://github.com/LLNL/LAFF-On-PfHPC/blob/master/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/bcast2.c)

Figure 3.4: Process zero reads and broadcasts to all other processes.

The most naive implementation sends individual messages from the root node to the other nodes:

```

int My_Bcast( void *buff, int count, MPI_Datatype datatype,
              int root, MPI_Comm comm )
{
    int me, nprocs, dest, bcast_tag=99999;
    MPI_Status status;

    MPI_Comm_size( comm, &nprocs );
    MPI_Comm_rank( comm, &me );

    if ( me == root )
        for ( dest=0; dest<nprocs; dest++)
            if ( dest != root )
                MPI_Send( buff, count, datatype, dest, bcast_tag, comm );
    else

```

```

    MPI_Recv( buff, count, datatype, root, bcast_tag, comm, &status );
}

```

In our subsequent discussion, we are going to assume that at any given time, a process can only send one message to one other process and receive one message from another process. The problem with the naive implementation is that under our model the cost is

$$(p - 1)\alpha + (p - 1)n\beta,$$

where  $p$  equals the number of processes (`nprocs`) and  $n$  is the size of the message (`count`).

Can we do better? We next describe what is often referred to as a *minimum spanning tree* algorithm for broadcasting. The algorithm is broken down into steps, during each of which we can do a round of communication where each process can send and receive at most one message. When it starts, only one process, the root, has the message. In the first step, it sends this message to some other process, at a cost of  $\alpha + n\beta$ . At this point, the set of processes are partitioned into two roughly equal components (disjoint subsets), where the root and the destination of this first message are in separate components. These two processes now become the roots for two separate broadcasts, one in each component.

Proceeding this way, we find that after one communication step two processes have the message. After two communication steps, four processes have the message. After  $k$  communication steps,  $2^k$  processes have the message. This way, it will take  $\lceil \log_2(p) \rceil$  communication steps for all  $p$  processes to get the message. Here  $\lceil x \rceil$  is equals the *ceiling* of  $x$ , meaning the smallest integer greater than or equal to  $x$ . The cost of this approach is now

$$\lceil \log_2(p) \rceil (\alpha + n\beta) = \lceil \log_2(p) \rceil \alpha + \lceil \log_2(p) \rceil n\beta,$$

which is better than  $(p - 1)\alpha + (p - 1)n\beta$  if  $p \geq 4$  and much better if  $p$  is large.

How might we implement this? The above description is inherently recursive: the broadcast is described as partitioning of the set of processes, a communication, and then a broadcast within the components. It is usually best to have the implementation reflect how the algorithm is naturally described. So, we start with  $p$  processes indexed 0 through  $p - 1$ . Partitioning these into two components can be accomplished by computing the index of the middle process: `mid = p/2` (integer division). If the root is in the set  $\{0, \dots, \text{mid}\}$ , then a destination (`new_root`) is picked in the set  $\{\text{mid} + 1, \dots, p - 1\}$ . Otherwise, a destination (`new_root`) is picked from the set  $\{0, \dots, \text{mid}\}$ . The message is sent from `root` to `new_root`, and the broadcast continues in the two separate components.

Figure 3.5 translate the observations into code. Here `new_root` is taken to equal the left-most process if the current root is in the right component and the right-most process if the current root is in the left component. There are other choices that could be considered. Notice that to facilitate the recursion, we create an “auxiliary” routine that has two extra parameters: the ranks of the left-most and right-most processes that are participating in the broadcast. Initially, `left` equals zero while `right` equals  $p - 1$ . As the recursion unfolds, the broadcast is called on the left and right partition relative to what processes are participating. Notice that the recursive call only needs to happen for the component of which the calling process (`me`) is part, since the calling process will never participate in a send or receive for a component of which it is not part.

```
#include <mpi.h>

int MST_Bcast_aux( void *, int, MPI_Datatype, int, MPI_Comm, int, int );

int MST_Bcast( void *buf, int count, MPI_Datatype datatype, int root, MPI_Comm comm )
{
    int nprocs;

    MPI_Comm_size( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &nprocs );

    MST_Bcast_aux( buf, count, datatype, root, comm, 0, nprocs-1 );
}

int MST_Bcast_aux( void *buf, int count, MPI_Datatype datatype, int root, MPI_Comm comm,
                   int left, int right )
{
    int me, mid, new_root, bcast_tag=9999;
    MPI_Status status;

    if ( left != right ){
        MPI_Comm_rank( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &me );

        mid = ( left + right ) / 2;
        new_root = ( root <= mid ? right : left );

        if ( me == root )
            MPI_Send( buf, count, datatype, new_root, bcast_tag, comm );

        if ( me == new_root )
            MPI_Recv( buf, count, datatype, root, bcast_tag, comm, &status );

        if ( me <= mid ) // me is in left component
            MST_Bcast_aux( buf, count, datatype,
                           ( root <= mid ? root : new_root ), comm, left, mid );
        else // me is in right component
            MST_Bcast_aux( buf, count, datatype,
                           ( root <= mid ? new_root : root ), comm, mid+1, right );
    }
}
```

[github/LAFF–On–PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/MST\\_Bcast.c](https://github.com/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/MST_Bcast.c)

Figure 3.5: Minimum Spanning Tree broadcast.

**Homework 3.3.2.1** Examine file `test_bcast.c` to see how it tests the `MST_Bcast` implementation. Then compile and execute it with

```
mpicc MST_Bcast.c test_bcast.c -o test_bcast.x
mpirun -np test_bcast.x
```

 SEE ANSWER

### 3.3.3 Can we do better yet?

A lot of people believe that the MST broadcast is the best algorithm. In order to answer such question, it always pays to ask the question “What is the lower bound for the time required to ...” In this case, we want a reasonably tight lower bound for the broadcast operations involving a message of size  $n$  among  $p$  processes.

Under our model (a message costs time  $\alpha + n\beta$  and a process can only send to one process at a time and can only receive from one process at a time), we can make two observations:

- Broadcasting requires at least  $\lceil \log_2 p \rceil$  steps and hence a lower bound on the latency ( $\alpha$ ) term is  $\lceil \log_2 p \rceil \alpha$ .
- Broadcasting among at least two processes requires a  $\beta$  term of at least  $n\beta$  since the message must leave the root node.

This does not mean that a lower bound is given by  $\lceil \log_2 p \rceil \alpha + n\beta$ . After all, our model doesn't say anything about overlapping latency with communication. What we observe is that under our model the MST broadcast attains the lower bound on the  $\alpha$  term, but is off by a factor  $\log_2 p$  when it comes to the  $\beta$  term. So, if very little is being communicated, it should be the algorithm of choice (again: under our model of communication cost). If the message is long ( $n$  is large) then there may be an opportunity for improvement.

We are going to move on to other collective communication operations, and then will return to better algorithms for broadcast when the size of the message is large.

### 3.3.4 Various collective communications

In this unit, we discuss seven commonly encountered collective communications. How they are related is illustrated in Figure 3.6.

**Broadcast.** A vector of data,  $x$ , of size  $n$  items, starts on the root process. Upon completion, the broadcast leaves a copy of the data with each process.

Operation	Before				After			
	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
Broadcast	$x$				$x$	$x$	$x$	$x$

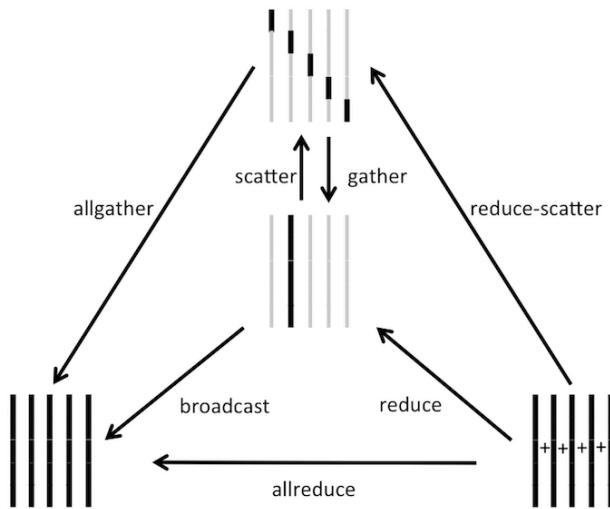


Figure 3.6: The seven collective communications discussed in this week.

**Scatter.** The scatter operation again starts with a vector,  $x$ , of size  $n$  items, on the root process. This time, the vector is viewed as being partitioned into  $p$  subvectors (components),

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_{p-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $x_0$  has  $n_i$  items, with  $\sum_{i=0}^{p-1} n_i = n$ . Upon completion, subvector  $x_i$  resides with process  $i$ .

Operation	Before				After			
	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
Scatter	$x_0$				$x_0$			
	$x_1$					$x_1$		
	$x_2$						$x_2$	
	$x_3$							$x_3$

**Gather.** The gather operation is the inverse of the scatter operation. Upon commencement each process  $i$  owns a subvector of data  $x_i$  of size  $n_i$ . Upon completion, one process, the root, owns the complete vector of data  $x$ .

Operation	Before				After			
	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
Gather	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$

**Allgather.** The allgather operation is like the gather operation, except that a copy of the gathered vector is left on all processes.

Operation	Before				After			
	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
Allgather	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$	$x_0$	$x_0$	$x_0$	$x_0$
					$x_1$	$x_1$	$x_1$	$x_1$
					$x_2$	$x_2$	$x_2$	$x_2$
					$x_3$	$x_3$	$x_3$	$x_3$

**Reduce(to-one).** Reduce operations start with (different) vectors of the same size on each of the processes, and reduce these vectors element-wise. The simplest reduce operation sums the elements. Let us examine four vectors of length 8 each:

$$x^{(0)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.0 \\ 1.0 \\ 2.0 \\ 3.0 \\ 4.0 \\ 5.0 \\ 6.0 \\ 7.0 \end{pmatrix}, x^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.1 \\ 1.1 \\ 2.1 \\ 3.1 \\ 4.1 \\ 5.1 \\ 6.1 \\ 7.1 \end{pmatrix}, x^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.2 \\ 1.2 \\ 2.2 \\ 3.2 \\ 4.2 \\ 5.2 \\ 6.2 \\ 7.2 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } x^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.3 \\ 1.3 \\ 2.3 \\ 3.3 \\ 4.3 \\ 5.3 \\ 6.3 \\ 7.3 \end{pmatrix}$$

then

$$\sum_j x^{(j)} = x^{(0)} + x^{(1)} + x^{(2)} + x^{(3)}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 0.0 \\ 1.0 \\ 2.0 \\ 3.0 \\ 4.0 \\ 5.0 \\ 6.0 \\ 7.0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0.1 \\ 1.1 \\ 2.1 \\ 3.1 \\ 4.1 \\ 5.1 \\ 6.1 \\ 7.1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0.2 \\ 1.2 \\ 2.2 \\ 3.2 \\ 4.2 \\ 5.2 \\ 6.2 \\ 7.2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0.3 \\ 1.3 \\ 2.3 \\ 3.3 \\ 4.3 \\ 5.3 \\ 6.3 \\ 7.3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.0 + 0.1 + 0.2 + 0.3 \\ 1.0 + 1.1 + 1.2 + 1.3 \\ 2.0 + 2.1 + 2.2 + 2.3 \\ 3.0 + 3.1 + 3.2 + 3.3 \\ 4.0 + 4.1 + 4.2 + 4.3 \\ 5.0 + 5.1 + 5.2 + 5.3 \\ 6.0 + 6.1 + 6.2 + 6.3 \\ 7.0 + 7.1 + 7.2 + 7.3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The reduce(-to-one) operation performs this operation across processes, leaving the result only at an indicated root node:

Operation	Before				After			
	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
Reduce(-to-one)	$x^{(0)}$	$x^{(1)}$	$x^{(2)}$	$x^{(3)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$			

**Reduce-scatter.** The reduce-scatter operation similarly computes an element-wise reduction of vectors, but this time leaves the result scattered among the processes.

In our previous example, the operation may be illustrated by

	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
Before	0.0	0.1	0.2	0.3
	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.3
	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.3
	3.0	3.1	3.2	3.3
	4.0	4.1	4.2	4.3
	5.0	5.1	5.2	5.3
	6.0	6.1	6.2	6.3
	7.0	7.1	7.2	7.3
After	$0.0 + 0.1 + 0.2 + 0.3$			
	$1.0 + 1.1 + 1.2 + 1.3$	$2.0 + 2.1 + 2.2 + 2.3$		
		$3.0 + 3.1 + 3.2 + 3.3$		
			$4.0 + 4.1 + 4.2 + 4.3$	
			$5.0 + 5.1 + 5.2 + 5.3$	
				$6.0 + 6.1 + 6.2 + 6.3$
				$7.0 + 7.1 + 7.2 + 7.3$

Thus, each process  $i$  starts with an equally sized vector  $x^{(i)}$  which is partitioned as

$$x^{(i)} = \begin{pmatrix} x_0^{(i)} \\ x_1^{(i)} \\ \vdots \\ x_{p-1}^{(i)} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Upon completion, each process  $i$  ends up with the result of computing  $\sum_{j=0}^{p-1} x_i^{(j)}$  as illustrated by

Operation	Before				After			
	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
Reduce-scatter	$x_0^{(0)}$	$x_0^{(1)}$	$x_0^{(2)}$	$x_0^{(3)}$	$\sum_j x_0^{(j)}$			
	$x_1^{(0)}$	$x_1^{(1)}$	$x_1^{(2)}$	$x_1^{(3)}$		$\sum_j x_1^{(j)}$		
	$x_2^{(0)}$	$x_2^{(1)}$	$x_2^{(2)}$	$x_2^{(3)}$			$\sum_j x_2^{(j)}$	
	$x_3^{(0)}$	$x_3^{(1)}$	$x_3^{(2)}$	$x_3^{(3)}$				$\sum_j x_3^{(j)}$

**Allreduce.** Finally, there is the allreduce operation, which element-wise reduces vectors, leaving the result duplicated on all processes.

Operation	Before				After			
	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
Allreduce	$x^{(0)}$	$x^{(1)}$	$x^{(2)}$	$x^{(3)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$

## 3.4 More Algorithms for Collective Communication

### 3.4.1 Minimum Spanning Tree scatter and gather algorithms

We describe what is often referred to as a *minimum spanning tree* algorithm for the scatter operation. As for the MST broadcast, the algorithm is broken down into steps, during each of which we can do a round of communication where each process can send and receive at most one message. When it starts, only one process, the root, has the message. In the first step, it partitions the processes into two subsets (components) and sends from the root only the part of the data that needs to end up in the “other component” to some process in that component. At this point, the set of processes is partitioned into two roughly equal components (disjoint subsets), where the root and the destination of this first message are in separate components. These two processes now become the roots for two separate scatter operations, one in each component.

Let us illustrate how to implement a scatter operation by simplifying the operation slightly. We will implement

```

#include <mpi.h>
int MST_Scatterx_aux( int *, int *, int, MPI_Comm, int, int );

int MST_Scatterx( int *buf, int *displs, int root, MPI_Comm comm)
{
    int nprocs;

    MPI_Comm_size( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &nprocs );
    MST_Scatterx_aux( buf, displs, root, comm, 0, nprocs-1 );
}

int MST_Scatterx_aux( int *buf, int *displs,
                      int root, MPI_Comm comm, int left, int right )
{
    int me, mid, new_root, scat_tag=9999;
    MPI_Status status;

    if ( left != right ){
        MPI_Comm_rank( MPI_COMM_WORLD, &me );

        mid = ( left + right ) / 2;
        new_root = ( root <= mid ? right : left );

        if ( me == root )
            if ( me <= mid )
                MPI_Send( &buf[ displs[ mid+1 ] ], displs[ right+1 ] - displs[ mid+1 ],
                          MPI_INT, new_root, scat_tag, comm );
            else
                MPI_Send( &buf[ displs[ left ] ], displs[ mid+1 ] - displs[ left ],
                          MPI_INT, new_root, scat_tag, comm );

        if ( me == new_root )
            if ( me > mid )
                MPI_Recv( &buf[ displs[ mid+1 ] ], displs[ right+1 ] - displs[ mid+1 ],
                          MPI_INT, root, scat_tag, comm, &status );
            else
                MPI_Recv( &buf[ displs[ left ] ], displs[ mid+1 ] - displs[ left ],
                          MPI_INT, root, scat_tag, comm, &status );

        if ( me <= mid ) //me is in left component
            MST_Scatterx_aux( buf, displs,
                               ( root <= mid ? root : new_root ), comm, left, mid );
        else // me is in right component
            MST_Scatterx_aux( buf, displs,
                               ( root <= mid ? new_root : root ), comm, mid+1, right );
    }
}

```

[github/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/MST\\_Scatterx.c](https://github.com/LLNL/LAFF-On-PfHPC/blob/master/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/MST_Scatterx.c)

Figure 3.7: Minimum Spanning Tree scatter.

```
int MST_Scatterx( int *buf, int *displs,
                   int root, MPI_Comm comm )
```

This routine communicates items of type `int`.

- On the root process, `buf` is the address where the data to be scattered is stored. On the other processes, it is a temporary buffer of the same size that can be used as part of the implementation *and* the part that is meant for process  $i$  is left starting at `&buf[ displ[ i ] ]`.
- `displs` is an array of  $p + 1$  integers that are displacements into the send buffer that indicate where the part that ends up at each process starts. `buf[ i ]` through `buf[ displs[ i+1 ] - 1 ]` will end up on process  $i$ . All processes start with a copy of this array.
- `root` is the rank of sending process.
- `comm` is the communicator.

Notice in particular that the displacement has one extra entry, `displs[ nprocs ]` that indicates where the element *after* the part to be sent to process  $nprocs-1$  starts. Usually, we would expect `displs[ 0 ]` to equal 0. This makes calculations of what to send simpler. An implementation of `MST_Scatterx` closely mirrors that of `MST_Bcast` and is given in Figure 3.7.

**Homework 3.4.1.1** Examine the implementation in `MST_Scatterx.c` and test it with the driver in `test_scatter.c` by executing

```
mpicc test_scatter.c MST_Scatterx.c -o test_scatter.x
mpirun -np 4 test_scatter.x
```

 SEE ANSWER

So what is the cost of the MST scatter algorithm under our model? Let's make the simplification that the number of processes,  $p$ , is a power of two, so that  $\log_2 p$  is an integer. If  $n$  data items are to be scattered, and we assume that each process in the end receives  $n/p$  data items, then

- In the first communication step,  $n/2$  items are sent by the root.
- In the second communication step,  $n/4$  items are sent by each of the two roots.
- In the  $k$ th communication step,  $n/(2^k)$  items are sent by each of the  $2^{k-1}$  roots.

Thus, the total cost is given by

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\log_2 p} \left( \alpha + \frac{n}{2^k} \beta \right) = \log_2 p \alpha + \frac{p-1}{p} n \beta.$$

What is the lower bound on the cost? Under the same assumptions, one can argue that the lower bound on the  $\alpha$  term is given by

$$\log_2 p \alpha$$

while the lower bound on the  $\beta$  term is

$$\frac{p-1}{p} n\beta.$$

Why? Because there are at least  $\log_2 p$  communication steps, each of which incurs a startup cost of  $\alpha$ . Also, all but  $n/p$  items must leave the root process and hence the beta term is at least  $(n - n/p)\beta$ , which is equal to  $(p-1)/p n\beta$ . We conclude that the MST scatter algorithm is optimal in both the  $\alpha$  term and  $\beta$  term.

We now turn to the gather operation, which reverses the communication performed by the scatter operation. We leave it as an exercise to implement this as

```
int MPI_Gatherx( int *buf, int *displs,
int root, MPI_Comm comm )
```

This routine communicates items of type `int`.

- On the root process, `buf` is the address where the data is returned upon completion. On the other processes, it is a temporary buffer of the same size that can be used as part of the implementation *and* the part that is contributed by process  $i$  starts at `&buf[ displs[ i ] ]`.
- `displs` is an array of  $p+1$  integers that are displacements into the buffer that indicate where the part that starts at each process exists. `buf[ i ]` through `buf[ displs[ i+1 ]-1 ]` are contributed by process  $i$ . All processes start with a copy of this array.
- `root` is the rank of the root of the gather.
- `comm` is the communicator.

**Homework 3.4.1.2** Copy `MST_Scatterx.c` into `MST_Gatherx.c` and modify it to implement a gather to the root. You can test this with the driver in `test_gather.c` by executing

```
mpicc test_gather.c MST_Gatherx.c -o test_gather.x
mpirun -np 4 test_gather.x
```

☞ SEE ANSWER

**Homework 3.4.1.3** Give the time required for gathering a vector with  $n$  items using the MST gather algorithm. Give the best lower bound that you can justify.

☞ SEE ANSWER

What we notice about the scatter and gather operations is that they are inverses of each other. If one has an algorithm for one, the communication can be reversed to yield an algorithm for the other. We are going to call these two operations *duals* of each other.

### 3.4.2 MST broadcast and reduce(-to-one)

We have already discussed the MST broadcast algorithm. We now discuss a MST algorithm for its dual operation: the reduce(-to-one). While in the broadcast, we start with a vector of size  $n$  items on the root and finish with vectors of size  $n$  items on each of the processes (where these vectors are duplicates of the original vector), The reduce-to-one inverts this operation: it starts with vectors of size  $n$  items on each of the processes and reduces these element-wise to one vector, leaving the result at the root. What is important is that the reduction operator commutes, as is the case for summation.

The broadcast algorithm partitions the processes into two components, sends the message from the root to the “other component” and then proceeds recursively with broadcasts in each of the two components. A MST reduce-to-one can be implemented by partitioning the processes into two components, identifying a new root in the “other component,” recursively performing a reduce-to-one within each of the two components, and finishing by sending the result from the new root to the root, reducing the result upon receipt.

Consider now the routine

```
int MST_Sum_to_One( int *buf, int count, int *tempbuf,
int root, MPI_Comm comm )
```

that sums arrays of double precision numbers. Here

- `buf` is the address where the contribution of the calling process is stored. On the root, upon completion of the operation, it will hold the result of element-wise adding the vectors from the different processes. It should not be changed on the other processes.
- `count` equals the *maximum* number of items in the vectors.
- `tempbuf` is a temporary buffer of size `count` that can be used as part of the communication/-computation.
- `root` is the rank of the root process, relative to the communicator given in `comm`.
- `comm` is the communicator that describes the group of processes involved in the communication, of which the sending receiving processes are part.

**Homework 3.4.2.1** Copy `MST_Bcast.c` into `MST_Sum.c` and modify it to implement a MST algorithm for summing to the root. You can test this with the driver in `test_mst_sum.c`.

► SEE ANSWER

**Homework 3.4.2.2** Give the time required for summing a vector with  $n$  items using the MST sum algorithm. Assume that adding two floating point numbers requires time  $\gamma$ . Give the best lower bound that you can justify.

► SEE ANSWER

### 3.4.3 Bucket allgather and reduce-scatter

We now describe a pair of algorithms that we call “bucket” algorithms. For the allgather, the idea is to view the processes as a ring, with process  $(i + 1) \bmod p$  to the right of process  $i$ . Each process starts with a bucket that contains its contribution to the allgather, and in each step these buckets are shifted to the right like a circular conveyor belt. We illustrate the approach with five processes in Figure 3.8.

The bucket allgather requires  $p - 1$  communication steps, each of which takes  $\alpha + n/p\beta$  time if each subvector is of size  $n/p$ . The total cost is then

$$(p - 1)\alpha + \frac{p - 1}{p}n\beta.$$

As before, we can easily argue that the lower bound on the  $\alpha$  term is  $\log_2 p\alpha$ . Thus the bucket algorithm is far from optimal in that respect. We will fix this later. Like for the gather operation, it can be argued that each process needs to receive  $p - 1$  packets of size  $n/p$  and hence the beta term achieves the lower bound under our model.

An implementation of the discussed algorithm for is given in Figure 3.9. For that routine,

- `buf` is the address where upon completion the data is returned upon completion. When the routine is called, it also holds on each process  $i$  the part contributed by that process, starting at `&buf[ displ[ i ] ]`.
- `displs` is an array of  $p + 1$  integers that are displacements into the buffer that indicate where the part that starts at each process exists. `buf[ i ]` through `buf[ displs[ i+1 ]-1 ]` are contributed by process  $i$ . All processes start with a copy of this array.
- `comm` is the communicator.

**Homework 3.4.3.1** If a send occurs before the corresponding receive, the message is typically buffered, which means that an extra memory-to-memory copy happens when the receive is matched to the message. If it is guaranteed that the receive was posted before the send is called, a special routine known as a “ready” send can be called, `MPI_Rsend`. Read up on this send routine. Then copy `Bucket_Allgatherx.c` into `Bucket_Allgatherx_opt.c` and modify it so that a call to `MPI_Rsend` can be used. If you are careful, each process should only have to send one message to the neighbor to its left to guarantee all receives will be posted before the corresponding send commences.

SEE ANSWER

The reduce-scatter is the dual of the allgather. In Figure 3.10, we illustrate a bucket algorithm for reduce-scatter. While it is possible to instead send message to the right at each step, as we did for the allgather, we want to emphasize that *if* one has an algorithm for one of the two duals, then the algorithm for the other one can be obtained by reversing the communication (and, possibly, adding a reduction operation). For this reason, all communication is to the left in our example.

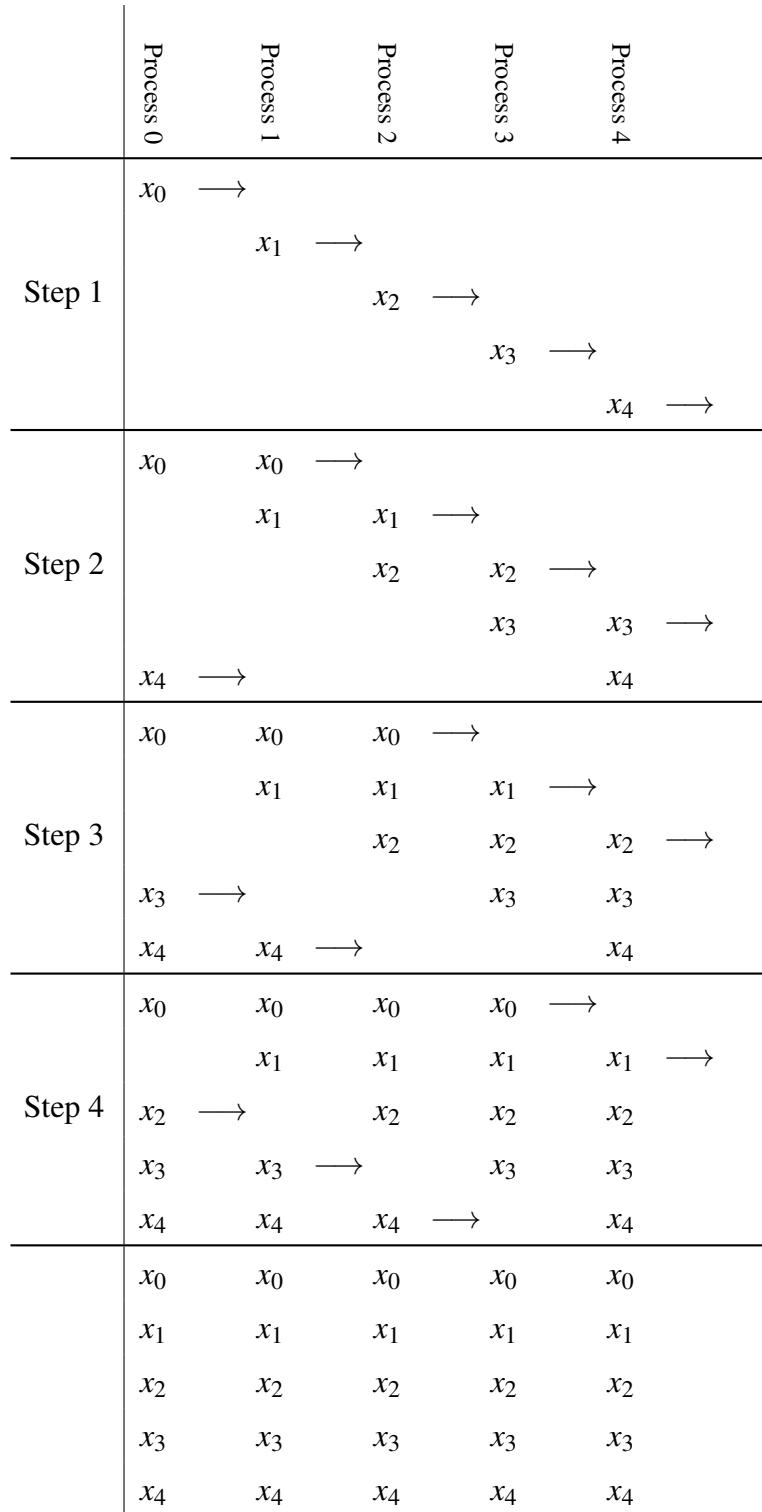


Figure 3.8: Bucket algorithm for allgather on five processes.

```
#include <mpi.h>

int Bucket_Allgatherx( int *buf, int *displs, MPI_Comm comm)
{
    int me, nprocs, left, right, inbucket, outbucket, allgather_tag=9999;
    MPI_Status status;
    MPI_Request request;

    MPI_Comm_rank( comm, &me );
    MPI_Comm_size( comm, &nprocs );

    left = ( me - 1 + nprocs ) % nprocs;
    right = ( me + 1 ) % nprocs;

    inbucket = left;
    outbucket = me;

    for ( int step=1; step<nprocs; step++ ){
        // Post receive for incoming bucket
        MPI_Irecv( &buf[ displs[ inbucket ] ], displs[ inbucket+1 ] - displs[ inbucket ],
                   MPI_INT, left, allgather_tag, comm, &request );

        // Send outgoing bucket
        MPI_Send( &buf[ displs[ outbucket ] ], displs[ inbucket+1 ] - displs[ inbucket ],
                  MPI_INT, right, allgather_tag, comm );

        //
        MPI_Wait( &request, &status );

        outbucket = inbucket;
        inbucket = ( inbucket-1+nprocs ) % nprocs;
    }
}
```

[github/LAFF–On–PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/Bucket\\_Allgather.c](https://github.com/LAFF-On-PfHPC/Assignments/WeekC/MPI/Bucket_Allgather.c)

Figure 3.9: Bucket allgather.

**Homework 3.4.3.2** Use the illustration in Figure 3.10 to implement a sum-scatter algorithm. You may want to start by copying `Bucket-Allgather.c` to `Bucket-Sum-scatter.c`. Assume the data type is double precision float.

➡ SEE ANSWER

**Homework 3.4.3.3** Analyze the cost of the bucket reduce-scatter as well as the lower bound.

➡ SEE ANSWER

	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 4
Step 1	$x_0^{(0)}$	$x_0^{(1)}$	$x_0^{(2)}$	$x_0^{(3)}$	$x_0^{(4)}$
	$x_1^{(0)}$	$x_1^{(1)}$	$x_1^{(2)}$	$x_1^{(3)}$	$x_1^{(4)}$
	$x_2^{(0)}$	$x_2^{(1)}$	$x_2^{(2)}$	$x_2^{(3)}$	$x_2^{(4)}$
	$x_3^{(0)}$	$x_3^{(1)}$	$x_3^{(2)}$	$x_3^{(3)}$	$x_3^{(4)}$
	$x_4^{(0)}$	$x_4^{(1)}$	$x_4^{(2)}$	$x_4^{(3)}$	$x_4^{(4)}$
Step 2	$x_0^{(0)}$	$x_0^{(1)}$	$x_0^{(2)}$	$x_0^{(3:4)}$	
		$x_1^{(1)}$	$x_1^{(2)}$	$x_1^{(3)}$	$x_1^{(4:0)}$
	$x_2^{(0:1)}$		$x_2^{(2)}$	$x_2^{(3)}$	$x_2^{(4)}$
	$x_3^{(0)}$	$x_3^{(1:2)}$		$x_3^{(3)}$	$x_3^{(4)}$
	$x_4^{(0)}$	$x_4^{(1)}$	$x_4^{(2:3)}$		$x_4^{(4)}$
Step 3	$x_0^{(0)}$	$x_0^{(1)}$	$x_0^{(2:4)}$		
		$x_1^{(1)}$	$x_1^{(2)}$	$x_1^{(3:0)}$	
			$x_2^{(2)}$	$x_2^{(3)}$	$x_2^{(4:1)}$
	$x_3^{(0:2)}$			$x_3^{(3)}$	$x_3^{(4)}$
	$x_4^{(0)}$	$x_4^{(1:3)}$			$x_4^{(4)}$
Step 4	$x_0^{(0)}$	$x_0^{(1:4)}$			
		$x_1^{(1)}$	$x_1^{(2:0)}$		
			$x_2^{(2)}$	$x_2^{(3:1)}$	
				$x_3^{(3)}$	$x_3^{(4:2)}$
	$x_4^{(0:3)}$				$x_4^{(4)}$
	$x_0^{(0:4)}$				
		$x_1^{(1:0)}$			
			$x_2^{(2:1)}$		
				$x_3^{(3:2)}$	
					$x_4^{(4:3)}$

Figure 3.10: Bucket algorithm for sum-scatter on five processes. Here  $x_i^{(j:k)}$  stands for  $x_i^{(j)} + \dots + x_i^{(k)}$  if  $j < k$  and  $x_i^{(j)} + \dots + x_i^{(4)} + x_i^{(0)} + \dots + x_i^{(k)}$  if  $j > k$ .

## 3.5 A Calculus of Collective Communication

We have discussed a number of algorithms: four MST algorithms, for broadcast, reduce, scatter, and gather, and two bucket algorithms, for allgather and reduce-scatter. We are now going to discuss a family of algorithms that build upon these. The idea is that some algorithms are appropriate for the case where relatively little data is involved, while others are better suited for the case where a large amount of data is communicated. Eventually, we discuss how to then cover the range in between.

### 3.5.1 The short vector case

When the vector of data being communication is short, it is the  $\alpha$  term of the cost that dominates. It is easy to reason, under our model of communication, that for all seven collectives we have discussed a lower bound on the  $\alpha$  term is given by  $\log_2(p)\alpha$ . The reasoning is simple: All operations require all processes to communicate with each other. It takes  $\log_2(p)$  communication steps for this to happen. Hence the  $\log_2(p)\alpha$  lower bound.

We have discussed four algorithms that attain this lower bound: MST broadcast, MST reduce, MST scatter, and MST gather. We highlight these in Figure 3.11 (a). Next, we observe that one can compose these algorithms to achieve algorithms for the other three operations, as illustrated in Figure 3.11 (b)–(d). All of these derived algorithms have an  $\alpha$  term of  $2\log_2(p)\alpha$ , and hence twice the lower bound under our model.

**Homework 3.5.1.1** Which of the following is the result of composing the indicated collective communications (within the same group of processes). (Assume that the subvectors involved are of size  $n/p$ .)

1. Scatter followed by gather.
2. Gather followed by scatter.
3. Reduce(-to-one) followed by broadcast.
4. Reduce(-to-one) followed by scatter.
5. Reduce(-to-one) followed by point-to-point.
6. Gather

Notice that there isn't necessarily a single correct answer, or a complete answer. Just think about the options.

SEE ANSWER

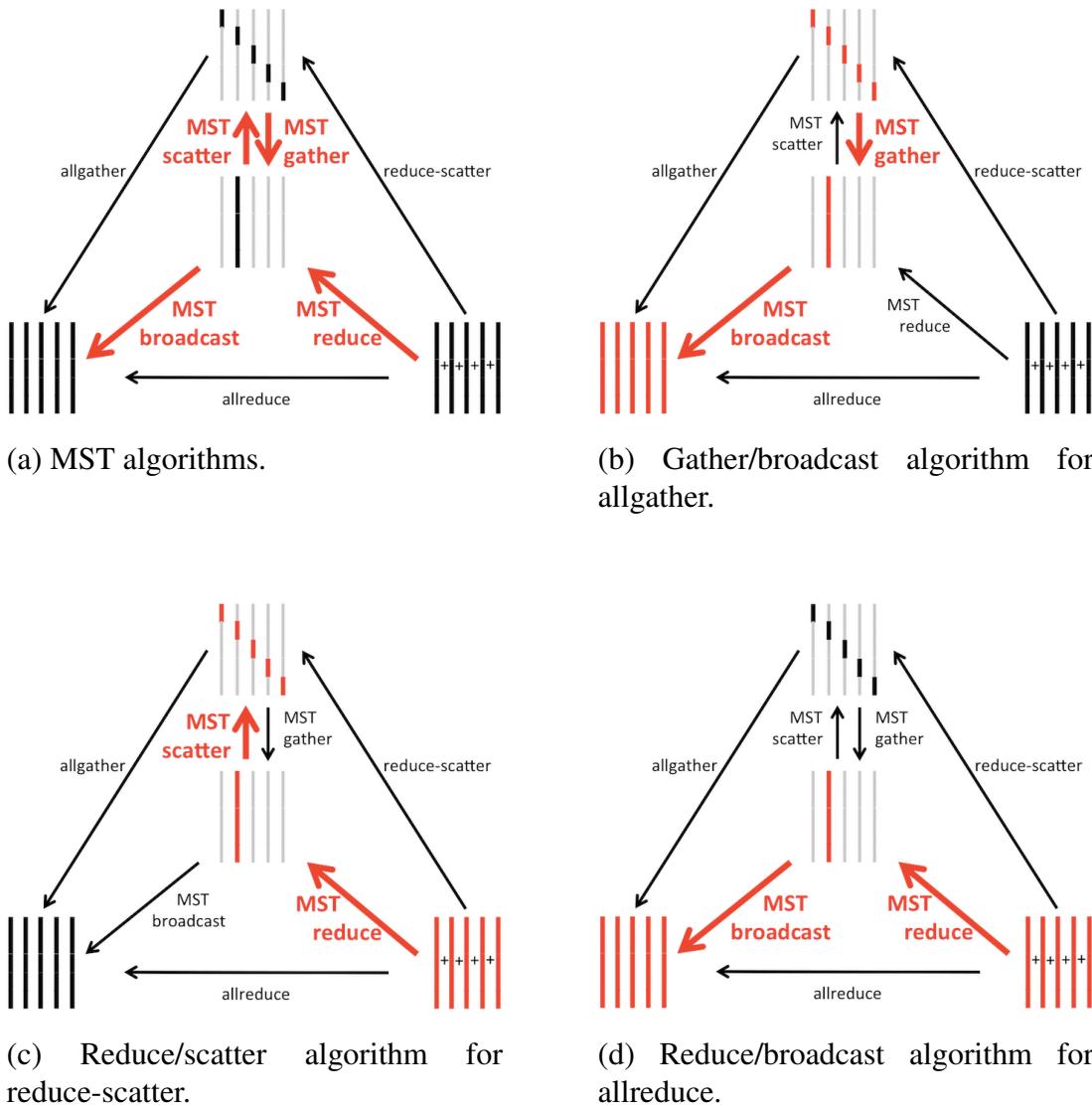


Figure 3.11: Algorithms for communicating with short vectors.

### 3.5.2 Leveraging ready-send for composed short-vector algorithms

A typical implementation of MPI\_Send uses a “three pass handshake.” What we mean by this is that the sending process sends an initial message to the receiving process to check initiate. Upon receipt, the receiving message prepares to receive the message (e.g., checks if space is available to buffer it if the corresponding receive has not been posted) and send an acknowledgment to the sender. The third message then communicates the actual data.

As mentioned before, the message can be sent with a *ready* send (MPI\_Rsend) if it is known that the receive has already been posted. This variant of sending can use a “one pass handshake.” What this means is that the latency is, roughly, one third of that of MPI\_Send. This, in turn, means that careful implementations of the three derived algorithms (gather/broadcast, reduce/scatter, re-

duce/broadcast) have an  $\alpha$  term of  $\frac{4}{3}\alpha$ . The idea is to post all the receives for the second MST algorithm up front. The execution of the first MST algorithm also guarantees that ready send can be used during the execution of the second algorithm.

**Homework 3.5.2.1** Implement gather/broadcast, reduce/scatter, and reduce/broadcast algorithms with MPI\_Rsend.

 SEE ANSWER

### 3.5.3 The long vector case

When the vector of data being communication is long, it is the  $\beta$  term of the cost that dominates. Assuming that all processes receive or contribute the same subvector of size  $n/p$ , the MST scatter and MST gather algorithms both attain the lower bound for the beta term:  $\frac{p-1}{p}n\beta$ . Similarly, the bucket allgather algorithm does the same:  $\frac{p-1}{p}n\beta$ . The bucket reduce-scatter does too:  $\frac{p-1}{p}n\beta + \frac{p-1}{p}n\gamma$ . We highlight these four algorithms in Figure 3.12 (a). We now discuss how these four become the building blocks for the other three collectives when the vectors are long, as illustrated in Figure 3.12 (b)–(d).

**Homework 3.5.3.1** Which of the following is the result of composing the indicated collective communications (within the same group of processes). (Assume that the subvectors involved are of size  $n/p$ .)

1. Scatter followed by allgather.
2. Reduce-scatter followed by allgather.
3. Reduce-scatter followed by gather.

 SEE ANSWER

### 3.5.4 Viewing the processes as a higher dimensional mesh

The problem with the bucket algorithms is that they have a large  $\alpha$  (latency) term. With as large as distributed memory architectures have become, viewing them as a one dimensional array of processes is not feasible, especially considering that  $\alpha$  is three to four magnitudes greater than  $\beta$ . We now show how viewing the processes as a logical higher dimensional mesh allows us to reduce the  $\alpha$  term without changing the  $\beta$  term.

Let's focus on allgather. View the  $p$  processes as an  $r \times c$  mesh, where  $p = rc$ . Then the allgather can be achieved by first performing an allgather within rows, followed by an allgather of the result within columns. The cost, if bucket algorithms are used in both dimensions and each process starts with  $n/p$  items, becomes

$$(c-1)\left(\alpha + \frac{n}{p}\beta\right) + (r-1)\left(\alpha + c\frac{n}{p}\beta\right) = (c+r-2)\alpha + \frac{p-1}{p}n\beta.$$

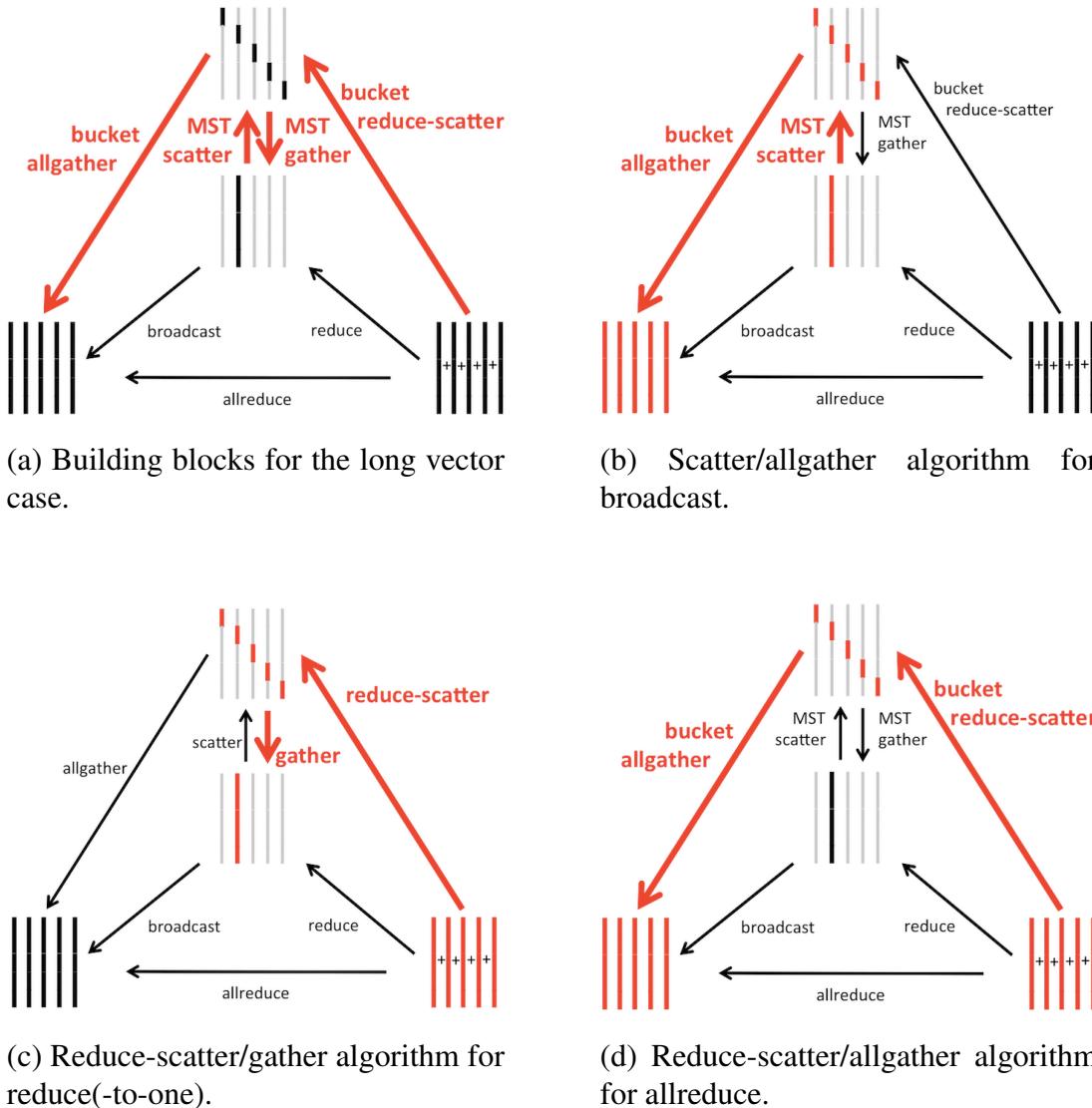


Figure 3.12: Algorithms for communicating with long vectors.

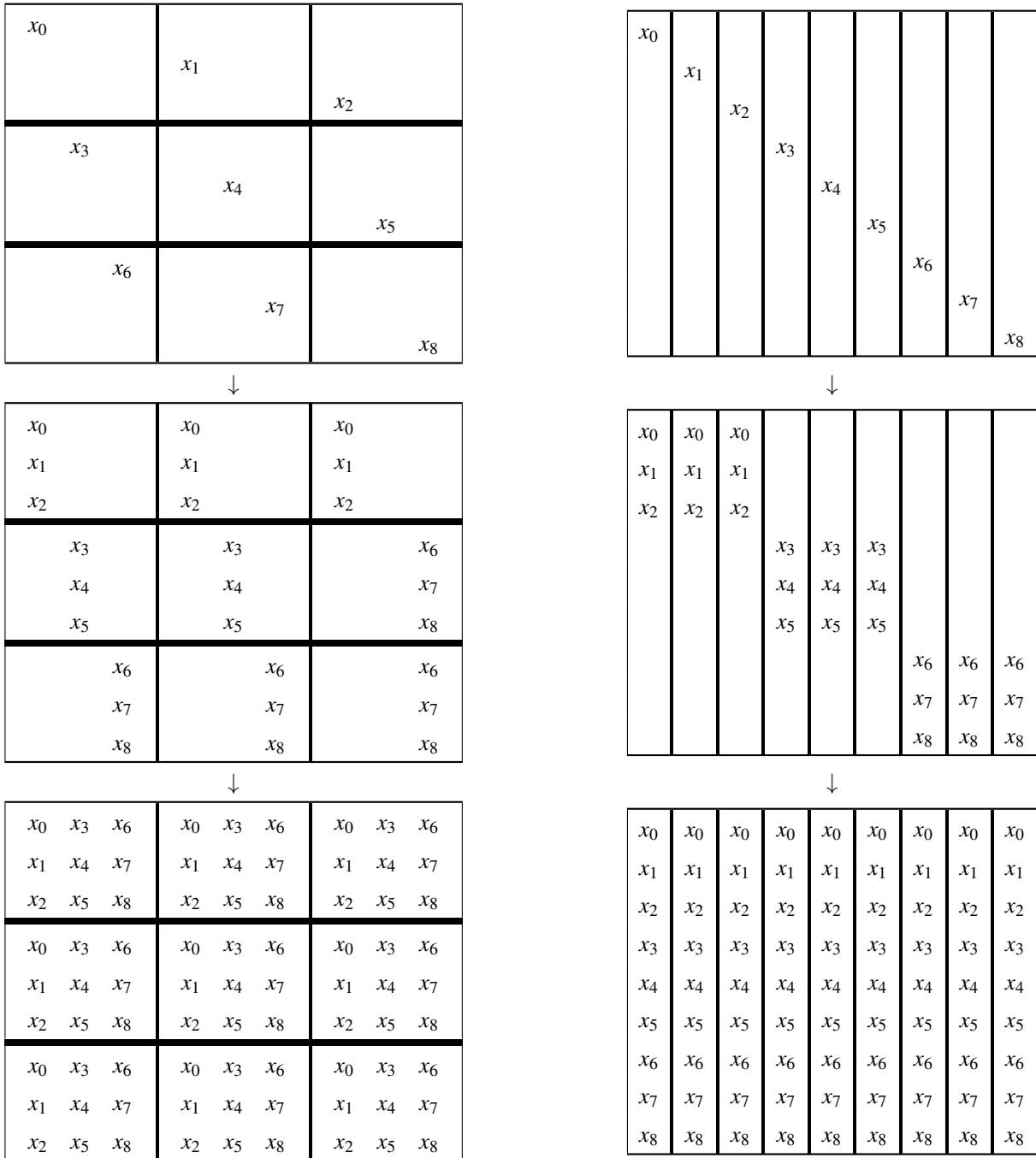
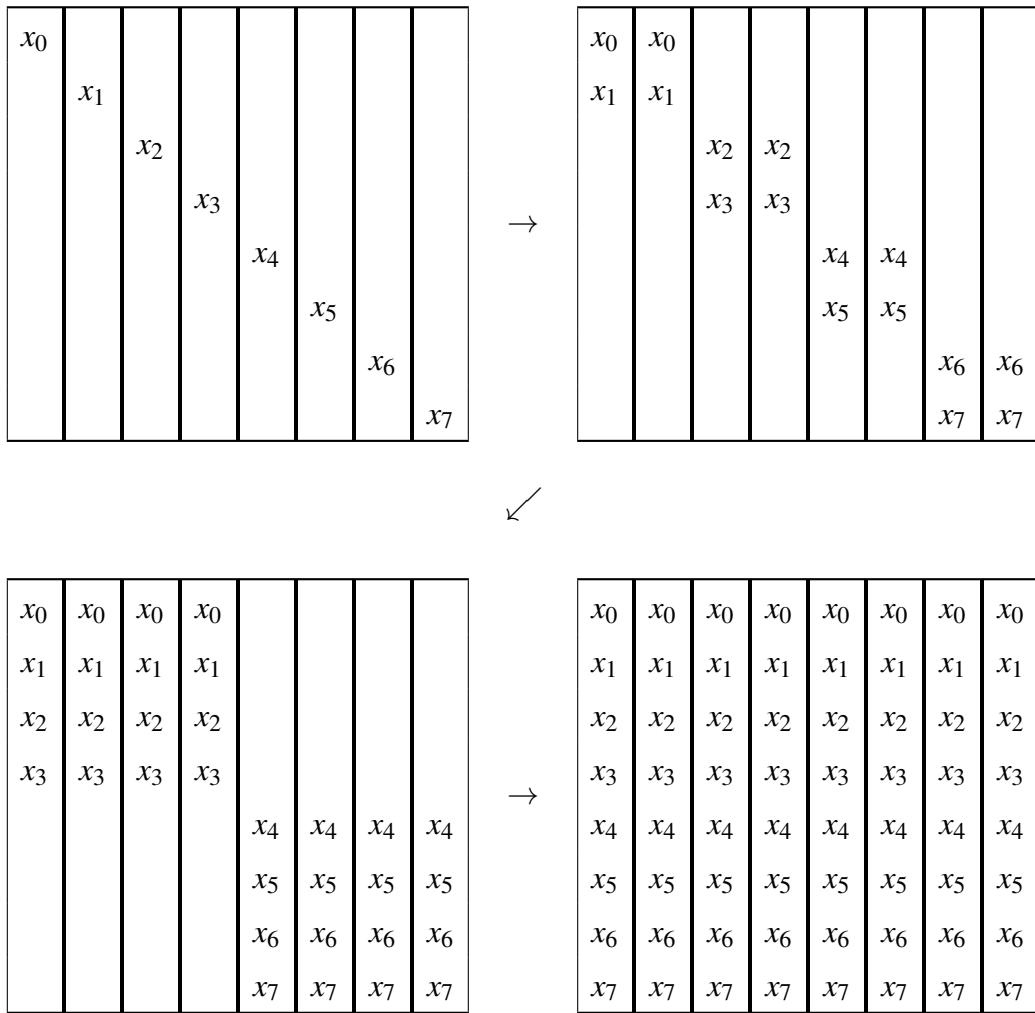


Figure 3.13: Allgather algorithm that views the processes as a 2D mesh, with an allgather within rows followed by an allgather within columns. On the left each box represents a process and the subvectors form a 2D array as well. On the right, we view the processes as a linear array.

Figure 3.14: Bidirectional exchange algorithm for allgather, illustrated for  $p = 8$ .

We notice that, relative to the cost of a bucket algorithm that views the processes as a one dimensional array, the cost of the  $\alpha$  term is reduced from  $(p - 1)\alpha$  to  $(r + c - 2)\alpha$  while the  $\beta$  term remains unchanged (and thus optimal). If  $r = c = \sqrt{p}$  then the  $\alpha$  term becomes  $2(\sqrt{p} - 1)$ .

**Homework 3.5.4.1** Show that

$$(c - 1)(\alpha + \frac{n}{p}\beta) + (r - 1)(\alpha + c\frac{n}{p}\beta) = (c + r - 2)\alpha + \frac{p - 1}{p}n\beta.$$

SEE ANSWER

Obviously, the insights can be extended. If the processes are viewed as a three dimensional mesh,  $p = p_0 \times p_1 \times p_2$ , then one can allgather within each of the dimensions. Under our assump-

tions, the cost becomes

$$(p_0 + p_1 + p_2 - 3)\alpha + \frac{p-1}{p}n\beta.$$

If  $p_0 = p_1 = p_2 = \sqrt[3]{p}$  then this becomes

$$3(\sqrt[3]{p}-1)\alpha + \frac{p-1}{p}n\beta.$$

In the limit, if  $p = 2^d$  ( $p$  is a power of two and  $d = \log_2(p)$ ), the processes can be viewed as a  $d$  dimensional mesh, with two processes in each direction. This is illustrated for  $p = 8$  in Figure 3.14. The cost now becomes

$$d(\sqrt[d]{p}-1)\alpha + \frac{p-1}{p}n\beta = \log_2(p)(2-1)\alpha + \frac{p-1}{p}n\beta = \log_2(p)\alpha + \frac{p-1}{p}n\beta.$$

What we notice is that this algorithm is optimal in both the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  terms. This algorithm is often referred to as an *bidirectional exchange* algorithm since one can view it as a successive pairwise exchange of the data that has accumulated in each dimension.

**Homework 3.5.4.2** Show that if  $d = \log_2(p)$  then  $\sqrt[d]{p} = 2$ .

 SEE ANSWER

It is important to realize that on modern distributed memory architectures invariably, when the processes are viewed as a higher dimensional mesh, communication will start causing network conflicts that don't impact the  $\alpha$  term, but increase the  $\beta$  term. Thus, a bidirectional exchange algorithm will likely cost more in practice. Details go beyond this discussion.

**Homework 3.5.4.3** Reduce-scatter is the dual of the allgather operation. Use this insight to propose a multidimensional mesh architecture that is optimal in the  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  terms when  $p = 2^d$  ( $p$  is a power of two).

 SEE ANSWER

### 3.5.5 From short vector to long vector

The next question is how to transition from a short vector algorithm to a long vector algorithm. The naive approach would be to simply find the cross over point when one becomes faster than the other. Due to the fact that we can view processes as a multiple dimensional mesh, and the mesh is not unique, there are actually many possible algorithms to be considered. In addition, the physical topology of the underlying network that connects nodes influences the details of each algorithm and/or network conflicts that may occur and may affect the cost of communication. This includes the fact that processes may be on the same node, in which case communication may be much more efficient than between nodes.

For the material in future weeks of this course, it is important to understand how collective communications can be composed to create other collective communications. It is not important to understand all the intricate details of how to achieve near-optimal implementations for the range

of vector lengths that may be encountered. For this reason, we refer the reader to a paper that goes into much greater detail, and we believe is quite readable given the background we have given:

Ernie Chan, Marcel Heimlich, Avi Purkayastha, Robert van de Geijn.

Collective communication: theory, practice, and experience.

*Concurrency and Computation: Practice & Experience*, Volume 19 Issue 1, September 2007.

Your institution may have a license to view this paper. If not, you may want to instead read the technical report that preceded the paper:

Ernie Chan, Marcel Heimlich, Avijit Purkayastha, and Robert van de Geijn.

Collective Communication: Theory, Practice, and Experience.

FLAME Working Note #22. The University of Texas at Austin, Department of Computer Sciences. Technical Report TR-06-44. September 26, 2006.

available from <http://www.cs.utexas.edu/users/flame/web/FLAMEPublications.html>.

## 3.6 Enrichment

## 3.7 Wrapup

Operation	Before				After					
Broadcast	Process 0		Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0		Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
	$x$					$x$		$x$	$x$	$x$
Reduce(-to-one)	Process 0		Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	Process 0		Process 1	Process 2	Process 3
	$x^{(0)}$		$x^{(1)}$	$x^{(2)}$	$x^{(3)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$				
Scatter	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3		Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	
	$x_0$					$x_0$				
	$x_1$						$x_1$			
	$x_2$							$x_2$		
	$x_3$								$x_3$	
Gather	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3		Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	
	$x_0$					$x_0$				
		$x_1$				$x_1$				
			$x_2$			$x_2$				
				$x_3$		$x_3$				
Allgather	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3		Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	
	$x_0$					$x_0$	$x_0$	$x_0$	$x_0$	
		$x_1$				$x_1$	$x_1$	$x_1$	$x_1$	
			$x_2$			$x_2$	$x_2$	$x_2$	$x_2$	
				$x_3$		$x_3$	$x_3$	$x_3$	$x_3$	
Reduce-scatter	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3		Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	
	$x_0^{(0)}$	$x_0^{(1)}$	$x_0^{(2)}$	$x_0^{(3)}$		$\sum_j x_0^{(j)}$				
	$x_1^{(0)}$	$x_1^{(1)}$	$x_1^{(2)}$	$x_1^{(3)}$			$\sum_j x_1^{(j)}$			
	$x_2^{(0)}$	$x_2^{(1)}$	$x_2^{(2)}$	$x_2^{(3)}$				$\sum_j x_2^{(j)}$		
	$x_3^{(0)}$	$x_3^{(1)}$	$x_3^{(2)}$	$x_3^{(3)}$					$\sum_j x_3^{(j)}$	
Allreduce	Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3		Process 0	Process 1	Process 2	Process 3	
	$x^{(0)}$	$x^{(1)}$	$x^{(2)}$	$x^{(3)}$		$\sum_j x^{(j)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$	$\sum_j x^{(j)}$	

Figure 3.15: A set of commonly encountered collective communications.



Week **4**

# **Distributed Memory Parallel Matrix-Vector Operations**

## **4.1 Opener**

### **4.1.1 Launch**

## 4.1.2 Outline Week 4

<b>4.1. Opener</b> . . . . .	<b>125</b>
4.1.1. Launch . . . . .	125
4.1.2. Outline Week 4 . . . . .	126
4.1.3. What you will learn . . . . .	127
<b>4.2. Parallel Matrix-Vector Multiplication</b> . . . . .	<b>128</b>
4.2.1. Notation . . . . .	128
4.2.2. A first parallel algorithm . . . . .	129
4.2.3. Speedup and efficiency . . . . .	129
4.2.4. Scalability . . . . .	131
4.2.5. A second parallel algorithm . . . . .	132
4.2.6. A weakly scalable algorithm . . . . .	132
<b>4.3. Parallel Rank-1 Update</b> . . . . .	<b>138</b>
4.3.1. Notation . . . . .	138
4.3.2. A weakly scalable algorithm . . . . .	139
<b>4.4. Toward Parallel Matrix-Matrix Multiplication</b> . . . . .	<b>142</b>
4.4.1. Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates, Part 1 . . . . .	142
4.4.2. Of vectors, rows, and columns . . . . .	143
4.4.3. Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates, Part 2 . . . . .	145
4.4.4. Matrix-matrix multiplication via matrix-vector multiplications . . . . .	149
4.4.5. High-Performance Parallel Matrix-Matrix Multiplication . . . . .	150
<b>4.5. Enrichment</b> . . . . .	<b>150</b>
<b>4.6. Wrapup</b> . . . . .	<b>150</b>

#### **4.1.3 What you will learn**

## 4.2 Parallel Matrix-Vector Multiplication

### 4.2.1 Notation

Suppose  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , and  $y \in \mathbb{R}^m$ , where

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,n-1} \\ \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{1,n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} & \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{m-1,n-1} \end{pmatrix}, x = \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } y = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_0 \\ \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Recalling that  $y = Ax$  (matrix-vector multiplication) is computed as

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_0 &= \alpha_{0,0}\chi_0 + \alpha_{0,1}\chi_1 + \cdots + \alpha_{0,n-1}\chi_{n-1} \\ \psi_1 &= \alpha_{1,0}\chi_0 + \alpha_{1,1}\chi_1 + \cdots + \alpha_{1,n-1}\chi_{n-1} \\ &\vdots && \vdots && \vdots \\ \psi_{m-1} &= \alpha_{m-1,0}\chi_0 + \alpha_{m-1,1}\chi_1 + \cdots + \alpha_{m-1,n-1}\chi_{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

we notice that element  $\alpha_{i,j}$  multiplies  $\chi_j$  and contributes to  $\psi_i$ . Thus we may summarize the interactions of the elements of  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $A$  by

	$\chi_0$	$\chi_1$	$\cdots$	$\chi_{n-1}$	
$\psi_0$	$\alpha_{0,0}$	$\alpha_{0,1}$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{0,n-1}$	
$\psi_1$	$\alpha_{1,0}$	$\alpha_{1,1}$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{1,n-1}$	
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\ddots$	$\vdots$	
$\psi_{m-1}$	$\alpha_{m-1,0}$	$\alpha_{m-1,1}$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{m-1,n-1}$	

(4.1)

which is meant to indicate that  $\chi_j$  must be multiplied by the elements in the  $j$ th column of  $A$  while the  $i$ th row of  $A$  contributes to  $\psi_i$ .

To elegantly describe the parallelization of operations like matrix-vector multiplication, it is important to understand how to view matrices and vectors by submatrices and subvectors, and how to then multiply so-partitioned matrices and vectors. If we partition

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{0,0} & A_{0,1} & \cdots & A_{0,N-1} \\ A_{1,0} & A_{1,1} & \cdots & A_{1,N-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{M-1,0} & A_{M-1,1} & \cdots & A_{M-1,N-1} \end{pmatrix}, x = \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_{M-1} \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } y = \begin{pmatrix} y_0 \\ y_1 \\ \vdots \\ y_{M-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $A_{i,j}$  is  $m_i \times n_j$ ,  $x_j$  has size  $n_j$ , and  $y_i$  has size  $m_i$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} y_0 &= A_{0,0}x_0 + A_{0,1}x_1 + \cdots + A_{0,N-1}x_{N-1} \\ y_1 &= A_{1,0}x_0 + A_{1,1}x_1 + \cdots + A_{1,N-1}x_{N-1} \\ &\vdots && \vdots && \vdots \\ y_{M-1} &= A_{M-1,0}x_0 + A_{M-1,1}x_1 + \cdots + A_{M-1,N-1}x_{N-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{4.2}$$

### 4.2.2 A first parallel algorithm

The last unit should make it pretty easy to recognize opportunities for parallelizing matrix-vector multiplication. For simplicity, we are going to assume that the matrix is square ( $n \times n$ ) and  $m_i = n_i$ . If there are  $p$  processes, then in (4.3) one could take  $M = p$  and  $N = 1$  to find that

$$\begin{aligned} y_0 &= A_0x \\ y_1 &= A_1x \\ &\vdots && \vdots \\ y_{p-1} &= A_{p-1}x \end{aligned}$$

where  $A_i$  is  $n_i \times n$  and  $y_i$  has size  $n_i$ . We can then dictate that  $A_i$ ,  $x$ , and  $y_i$  all reside on process  $i$ , and pick  $n_i \approx n/p$ . Bingo, we have a very nicely parallelized matrix-vector multiplication.

Let us make the example somewhat more realistic by dictating that however  $x$  is initially distributed among processes, that is how  $y$  must be distributed upon completion. Why this is a reasonable assumption, or at least a reasonable starting point, will become clear later. What we notice is that after the local matrix-vector multiply  $A_i x$  has been computed by process  $i$ , the subvectors of  $y$  have to be allgathered.

Let us assume that performing a floating point multiply and add each require time  $\gamma$  and the model of communication cost introduced in Week 3 (e.g., a message costs  $\alpha + n\beta$ ). Then, since we chose  $m = n$  and  $n$  is a multiple of  $p$ , performing the local matrix-vector multiplication  $y_i := Ax$  costs, approximately,  $2n_i n \gamma = 2n^2/p\gamma$  and a reasonable lower bound on the allgather is  $\log_2(p)\alpha + (p-1)/p n\beta$ . Thus, if  $p$  is large and hence  $(p-1)/p \approx 1$ , a reasonable estimate of the cost is given by

$$T_p(n) = 2\frac{n^2}{p}\gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + n\beta.$$

### 4.2.3 Speedup and efficiency

When one uses  $p$  processes (on different cores), one would hope to compute  $p$  times as fast. Usually, that is the best you can hope for<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup>Sometimes, you can achieve better than a factor  $p$ , because the  $p$  processes collectively have more resources. For example, you can usually make a bed faster than twice as fast when you do it with two people. Why? Because you don't have to walk back and forth from one side to the other. But this is the exception in practice.

Speedup is defined by the time required by (the best) implementation utilizing a single process,  $T_1$  divided by the time when using  $p$  processes (on different cores/processors),  $T_p$ . Let's revisit the example from the last unit. The parallel time was given by

$$T_p(n) = 2 \frac{n^2}{p} \gamma + \log_2(p) \alpha + n \beta.$$

The time it would take by a single process is  $T_1(n) = 2n^2\gamma$ . Thus, the estimated speedup attained by this algorithm is

$$S_p(n) = \frac{T_1(n)}{T_p(n)} = \frac{2n^2\gamma}{2 \frac{n^2}{p} \gamma + \log_2(p) \alpha + n \beta}.$$

We can multiply top and bottom by  $p$  and divide top and bottom by  $2n^2\gamma$  to find that

$$S_p(n) = \frac{p}{1 + \frac{p \log_2(p) \alpha}{2n^2 \gamma} + \frac{p \beta}{2n \gamma}}.$$

The efficiency of the algorithm is given by the speedup divided by  $p$ . It gives the fraction of the maximal speedup of  $p$  that is attained. For our example, this means that

$$E_p(n) = \frac{S_p(n)}{p} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{p \log_2(p) \alpha}{2n^2 \gamma} + \frac{p \beta}{2n \gamma}}$$

The question we can now ask ourselves is “Is this a good algorithm?” Clearly, this depends on how close the efficiency is to 1 (perfect speedup).

Looking at the efficiency for our example

$$E_p(n) = \frac{S_p(n)}{p} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{p \log_2(p) \alpha}{2n^2 \gamma} + \frac{p \beta}{2n \gamma}},$$

we can ask that of the algorithm presented in the last unit. The answer is that it depends on whether you are an optimist, a pessimist, or a realist.

**The optimist.** The optimist will make the following argument: If you fix the number of processes, and you increase the problem size to become (very) large, then for our example

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} E_p(n) = \frac{S_p(n)}{p} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{p \log_2(p) \alpha}{2n^2 \gamma} + \frac{p \beta}{2n \gamma}} = 1.$$

Thus, in the limit the algorithm will attain 100% efficiency, and hence it is a great parallel algorithm.

**The pessimist.** The pessimist will make the following counter argument: If you fix the problem size  $n$ , and you increase the number of processes that are used, then for our example

$$\lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} E_p(n) = \frac{S_p(n)}{p} = \lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{p \log_2(p) \alpha}{2n^2 \gamma} + \frac{p \beta}{2n \gamma}} = 0.$$

Thus, in the limit the algorithm will attain 0% efficiency, and hence it is a lousy parallel algorithm.

**The realist.** The realist will argue the following. To the optimist, the realist will explain that one can't store arbitrarily large matrices. To the pessimist, the realist will argue that as the number of processes is increased, so is the number of processes on which they execute, and hence the amount of memory that the processes collectively have access to. So, it is fair to increase the problem size (big machines are made to solve big problems) but it cannot become arbitrarily large.

What does this mean? If you think about  $y := Ax$ , you realize that it is matrix  $A$  that requires  $n^2$  floating point numbers (floats) to be stored. If each process comes with a memory of constant size  $K$  floats, then the total memory scales linearly with  $p$ . The largest matrix that can fit is (approximately) of size  $n_{\max}(p)$  with  $n_{\max}(p)^2 = Kp$  or, equivalently,  $n_{\max}(p)^2/p = K$ . The question is what happens to efficiency when computing with the largest matrix that fits, as the number of processes,  $p$ , is increased:

$$\lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} E_p(n_{\max}(p)) = \lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{p \log_2(p)}{2n_{\max}(p)^2} \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} + \frac{p}{2n_{\max}(p)} \frac{\beta}{\gamma}} = \lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{\log_2(p)}{2K} \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} + \frac{\sqrt{p}}{2\sqrt{K}} \frac{\beta}{\gamma}}.$$

Now,  $\log_2(p)$  grows very slowly, so we wouldn't be particularly concerned about the term

$$\frac{\log_2(p)}{2K} \frac{\alpha}{\gamma}.$$

The term

$$\frac{\sqrt{p}}{2\sqrt{K}} \frac{\beta}{\gamma}$$

is a concern because  $\beta$  is often two to three orders of magnitude greater than  $\gamma$  and  $\sqrt{p}$  grows quite quickly with  $p$ .

#### 4.2.4 Scalability

An algorithm is considered to be *strongly scalable* if efficiency can be maintained while keeping the problem size constant. Algorithms are never strongly scalable: eventually there isn't enough work to keep all processes usefully busy. But sometimes for a range of probably sizes and range of number of processes, an algorithm may be reasonably scalable.

Algorithms are never strongly scalable: eventually there isn't enough work to keep all processes usefully busy. But sometimes for a range of probably sizes and range of number of processes, an algorithm may be reasonably scalable.

An algorithm is considered to be *weakly scalable* if efficiency can be maintained by growing the problem size so that the memory use per process is kept constant. If the examined algorithm were weakly scalable, then

$$\lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} E_p(n_{\max}(p)) = E > 0.$$

where  $E$  is some (positive) constant. In this case, a positive efficiency can be maintained as the number of processors increases.

The proposed parallel algorithm for matrix-vector multiplication is neither strongly nor weakly scalable since

$$\lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} E_p(n_{\max}(p)) = \lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{p \log_2(p)}{2n_{\max}(p)^2} \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} + \frac{p}{2n_{\max}(p)} \frac{\beta}{\gamma}} = \lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{\log_2(p)}{2K} \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} + \frac{\sqrt{p}}{2\sqrt{K}} \frac{\beta}{\gamma}} = 0$$

even if we consider  $\log_2(p)$  to grow slowly enough that we can pretend it is a constant.

### 4.2.5 A second parallel algorithm

Let's revisit

$$\begin{aligned} y_0 &= A_{0,0}x_0 + A_{0,1}x_1 + \cdots + A_{0,N-1}x_{N-1} \\ y_1 &= A_{1,0}x_0 + A_{1,1}x_1 + \cdots + A_{1,N-1}x_{N-1} \\ &\vdots && \vdots && \vdots \\ y_{M-1} &= A_{M-1,0}x_0 + A_{M-1,1}x_1 + \cdots + A_{M-1,N-1}x_{N-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{4.3}$$

If we again restrict ourselves to a square  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  and we choose  $M = 1$  and  $N = p$  then

$$y = \underbrace{A_0x_0}_{y^{(0)}} + \underbrace{A_1x_1}_{y^{(1)}} + \cdots + \underbrace{A_{p-1}x_{p-1}}_{y^{(p-1)}},$$

where  $A_j$  is now  $n \times n_j$  and  $x_j$  has size  $n_j$ . We can then dictate that  $A_j$  and  $x_j$  all reside on process  $j$ . This allows to, in parallel, compute  $y^{(j)}$  of process  $j$ . The final result,  $y$ , is then computed by adding these contributions, requiring a reduction (summation) across the processes. The question is where the result is to reside. As we discussed before, we will dictate that the result vector,  $y$ , is left distributed like  $x$ . Thus, it is a reduce-scatter that is required.

**Homework 4.2.5.1** Analyze the cost, speedup, and efficiency of this second algorithm. Is it strongly scalable? Is it weakly scalable? How are the communications encountered in the first and second algorithms related?

SEE ANSWER

### 4.2.6 A weakly scalable algorithm

The two parallel algorithms that we have discussed so far view the  $p$  processes as a one dimensional array, indexed 0 through  $p - 1$ . We are now going to discuss a data distribution and algorithm that views the  $p$  processes as a  $r \times c$  mesh, where  $p = rc$ . To motivate this two dimensional distribution and algorithm, consider the computation  $y = Ax$  where  $A$  has been partitioned into

$9 \times 9$  submatrices and the vectors into 9 subvectors, of appropriate sizes:

$$\begin{aligned}
 y_0 &= A_{0,0}x_0 + A_{0,1}x_1 + A_{0,2}x_2 + A_{0,3}x_3 + A_{0,4}x_4 + A_{0,5}x_5 + A_{0,6}x_6 + A_{0,7}x_7 + A_{0,8}x_8 \\
 y_1 &= A_{1,0}x_0 + A_{1,1}x_1 + A_{1,2}x_2 + A_{1,3}x_3 + A_{1,4}x_4 + A_{1,5}x_5 + A_{1,6}x_6 + A_{1,7}x_7 + A_{1,8}x_8 \\
 y_2 &= A_{2,0}x_0 + A_{2,1}x_1 + A_{2,2}x_2 + A_{2,3}x_3 + A_{2,4}x_4 + A_{2,5}x_5 + A_{2,6}x_6 + A_{2,7}x_7 + A_{2,8}x_8 \\
 y_3 &= A_{3,0}x_0 + A_{3,1}x_1 + A_{3,2}x_2 + A_{3,3}x_3 + A_{3,4}x_4 + A_{3,5}x_5 + A_{3,6}x_6 + A_{3,7}x_7 + A_{3,8}x_8 \\
 y_4 &= A_{4,0}x_0 + A_{4,1}x_1 + A_{4,2}x_2 + A_{4,3}x_3 + A_{4,4}x_4 + A_{4,5}x_5 + A_{4,6}x_6 + A_{4,7}x_7 + A_{4,8}x_8 \\
 y_5 &= A_{5,0}x_0 + A_{5,1}x_1 + A_{5,2}x_2 + A_{5,3}x_3 + A_{5,4}x_4 + A_{5,5}x_5 + A_{5,6}x_6 + A_{5,7}x_7 + A_{5,8}x_8 \\
 y_6 &= A_{6,0}x_0 + A_{6,1}x_1 + A_{6,2}x_2 + A_{6,3}x_3 + A_{6,4}x_4 + A_{6,5}x_5 + A_{6,6}x_6 + A_{6,7}x_7 + A_{6,8}x_8 \\
 y_7 &= A_{7,0}x_0 + A_{7,1}x_1 + A_{7,2}x_2 + A_{7,3}x_3 + A_{7,4}x_4 + A_{7,5}x_5 + A_{7,6}x_6 + A_{7,7}x_7 + A_{7,8}x_8 \\
 y_8 &= A_{8,0}x_0 + A_{8,1}x_1 + A_{8,2}x_2 + A_{8,3}x_3 + A_{8,4}x_4 + A_{8,5}x_5 + A_{8,6}x_6 + A_{8,7}x_7 + A_{8,8}x_8
 \end{aligned}$$

We can organize these computations as illustrated by

$$\begin{aligned}
 \begin{pmatrix} y_0 \\ y_1 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} A_{0,0} & A_{0,1} & A_{0,2} \\ A_{1,0} & A_{1,1} & A_{1,2} \\ A_{2,0} & A_{2,1} & A_{2,2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} A_{0,3} & A_{0,4} & A_{0,5} \\ A_{1,3} & A_{1,4} & A_{1,5} \\ A_{2,3} & A_{2,4} & A_{2,5} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} A_{0,6} & A_{0,7} & A_{0,8} \\ A_{1,6} & A_{1,7} & A_{1,8} \\ A_{2,6} & A_{2,7} & A_{2,8} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_6 \\ x_7 \\ x_8 \end{pmatrix} \\
 \begin{pmatrix} y_3 \\ y_4 \\ y_5 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} A_{3,0} & A_{3,1} & A_{3,2} \\ A_{4,0} & A_{4,1} & A_{4,2} \\ A_{5,0} & A_{5,1} & A_{5,2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} A_{3,3} & A_{3,4} & A_{3,5} \\ A_{4,3} & A_{4,4} & A_{4,5} \\ A_{5,3} & A_{5,4} & A_{5,5} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} A_{3,6} & A_{3,7} & A_{3,8} \\ A_{4,6} & A_{4,7} & A_{4,8} \\ A_{5,6} & A_{5,7} & A_{5,8} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_6 \\ x_7 \\ x_8 \end{pmatrix} \\
 \begin{pmatrix} y_6 \\ y_7 \\ y_8 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} A_{6,0} & A_{6,1} & A_{6,2} \\ A_{7,0} & A_{7,1} & A_{7,2} \\ A_{8,0} & A_{8,1} & A_{8,2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} A_{6,3} & A_{6,4} & A_{6,5} \\ A_{7,3} & A_{7,4} & A_{7,5} \\ A_{8,3} & A_{8,4} & A_{8,5} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} A_{6,6} & A_{6,7} & A_{6,8} \\ A_{7,6} & A_{7,7} & A_{7,8} \\ A_{8,6} & A_{8,7} & A_{8,8} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_6 \\ x_7 \\ x_8 \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

The idea now is that, for this example, the processes can be viewed as a  $3 \times 3$  mesh. The process indexed  $(I, J)$  now holds submatrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_{3I,3J} & A_{3I,3J+1} & A_{3I,3J+2} \\ A_{3I+1,3J} & A_{3I+1,3J+1} & A_{3I+1,3J+2} \\ A_{3I+2,3J} & A_{3I+2,3J+1} & A_{3I+2,3J+2} \end{pmatrix}$$

and performs the computation

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_{3I}^{(J)} \\ y_{3I+1}^{(J)} \\ y_{3I+2}^{(J)} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{3I,3J} & A_{3I,3J+1} & A_{3I,3J+2} \\ A_{3I+1,3J} & A_{3I+1,3J+1} & A_{3I+1,3J+2} \\ A_{3I+2,3J} & A_{3I+2,3J+1} & A_{3I+2,3J+2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_{3J} \\ x_{3J+1} \\ x_{3J+2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

After this, within each row  $i$  of processes, the contributions

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_{3I}^{(J)} \\ y_{3I+1}^{(J)} \\ y_{3I+2}^{(J)} \end{pmatrix}$$

must be added (reduced) to the final result

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_{3I} \\ y_{3I+1} \\ y_{3I+2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

This leaves us to decide to which processes to initially assign subvectors  $x_j$  and to which processes to assign the result subvectors  $y_j$ .

Let us now illustrate the distributions of the vectors and matrix for a  $3 \times 4$  mesh of processes, as illustrated in Figures 4.1-4.4. In these, we use a  $3 \times 4$  mesh to demonstrate that the method is not dependent upon the mesh being square. Notice that the subvectors of  $x$  are distributed among the processes in column-major order while the subvectors of  $y$  are to be left distributed in row-major order. The reason why will become clear. The algorithm can now be described as follows:

- Initially the data is distributed as illustrated in Figure 4.1. The best way to understand the distribution is as follows:
  - Vector  $x$  is partitioned into  $p$  subvectors. These subvectors are distributed to the  $r \times c$  mesh of processes in column-major order, one subvector per process.
  - Vector  $y$  is partitioned into  $p$  subvectors. These subvectors are distributed to the  $r \times c$  mesh of processes in row-major order, one subvector per process.
  - Matrix  $A$  is partitioned into  $p \times p$  submatrices. Notice that  $A_{i,j}$  multiplies  $x_j$  and contributes to  $y_i$ . By assigning  $A_{i,j}$  to the same column of processes as is  $x_j$ , subvectors of  $x$  need only be communicated within that column of processes. By assigning  $A_{i,j}$  to the same row of processes as is  $y_i$ , subvectors of  $y$  need only be reduced (summed) within that row of processes.
- Allgather subvectors  $x_j$  within columns of processes at a cost of (approximately)

$$\log_2(r)\alpha + \frac{r-1}{r}\frac{n}{c}\beta.$$

(Figure 4.2.)

- Perform the local matrix-vector multiplication at a cost of (approximately)

$$2\frac{n^2}{p}\gamma.$$

(Figure 4.3.)

$x_0$	$x_3$	$x_6$	$x_9$
$y_0 \quad A_{0,0} \ A_{0,1} \ A_{0,2}$	$A_{0,3} \ A_{0,4} \ A_{0,5}$	$A_{0,6} \ A_{0,7} \ A_{0,8}$	$A_{0,9} \ A_{0,10} \ A_{0,11}$
$A_{1,0} \ A_{1,1} \ A_{1,2}$	$y_1 \quad A_{1,3} \ A_{1,4} \ A_{1,5}$	$A_{1,6} \ A_{1,7} \ A_{1,8}$	$A_{1,9} \ A_{1,10} \ A_{1,11}$
$A_{2,0} \ A_{2,1} \ A_{2,2}$	$A_{2,3} \ A_{2,4} \ A_{2,5}$	$y_2 \quad A_{2,6} \ A_{2,7} \ A_{2,8}$	$A_{2,9} \ A_{2,10} \ A_{2,11}$
$A_{3,0} \ A_{3,1} \ A_{3,2}$	$A_{3,3} \ A_{3,4} \ A_{3,5}$	$A_{3,6} \ A_{3,7} \ A_{3,8}$	$y_3 \quad A_{3,9} \ A_{3,10} \ A_{3,11}$
$x_1$	$x_4$	$x_7$	$x_{10}$
$y_4 \quad A_{4,0} \ A_{4,1} \ A_{4,2}$	$A_{4,3} \ A_{4,4} \ A_{4,5}$	$A_{4,6} \ A_{4,7} \ A_{4,8}$	$A_{4,9} \ A_{4,10} \ A_{4,11}$
$A_{5,0} \ A_{5,1} \ A_{5,2}$	$y_5 \quad A_{5,3} \ A_{5,4} \ A_{5,5}$	$A_{5,6} \ A_{5,7} \ A_{5,8}$	$A_{5,9} \ A_{5,10} \ A_{5,11}$
$A_{6,0} \ A_{6,1} \ A_{6,2}$	$A_{6,3} \ A_{6,4} \ A_{6,5}$	$y_6 \quad A_{6,6} \ A_{6,7} \ A_{6,8}$	$A_{6,9} \ A_{6,10} \ A_{6,11}$
$A_{7,0} \ A_{7,1} \ A_{7,2}$	$A_{7,3} \ A_{7,4} \ A_{7,5}$	$A_{7,6} \ A_{7,7} \ A_{7,8}$	$y_7 \quad A_{7,9} \ A_{7,10} \ A_{7,11}$
$x_2$	$x_5$	$x_8$	$x_{11}$
$y_8 \quad A_{8,0} \ A_{8,1} \ A_{8,2}$	$A_{8,3} \ A_{8,4} \ A_{8,5}$	$A_{8,6} \ A_{8,7} \ A_{8,8}$	$A_{8,9} \ A_{8,10} \ A_{8,11}$
$A_{9,0} \ A_{9,1} \ A_{9,2}$	$y_9 \quad A_{9,3} \ A_{9,4} \ A_{9,5}$	$A_{9,6} \ A_{9,7} \ A_{9,8}$	$A_{9,9} \ A_{9,10} \ A_{9,11}$
$A_{10,0} \ A_{10,1} \ A_{10,2}$	$A_{10,3} \ A_{10,4} \ A_{10,5}$	$y_{10} \quad A_{10,6} \ A_{10,7} \ A_{10,8}$	$A_{10,9} \ A_{10,10} \ A_{10,11}$
$A_{11,0} \ A_{11,1} \ A_{11,2}$	$A_{11,3} \ A_{11,4} \ A_{11,5}$	$A_{11,6} \ A_{11,7} \ A_{11,8}$	$y_{11} \quad A_{11,9} \ A_{11,10} \ A_{11,11}$

Figure 4.1: Parallel matrix-vector multiplication: Initial distribution of  $A$  and  $x$  and final distribution of  $y$ .

$x_0 \quad x_1 \quad x_2$	$x_3 \quad x_4 \quad x_5$	$x_6 \quad x_7 \quad x_8$	$x_9 \quad x_{10} \quad x_{11}$
$A_{0,0} \ A_{0,1} \ A_{0,2}$	$A_{0,3} \ A_{0,4} \ A_{0,5}$	$A_{0,6} \ A_{0,7} \ A_{0,8}$	$A_{0,9} \ A_{0,10} \ A_{0,11}$
$A_{1,0} \ A_{1,1} \ A_{1,2}$	$A_{1,3} \ A_{1,4} \ A_{1,5}$	$A_{1,6} \ A_{1,7} \ A_{1,8}$	$A_{1,9} \ A_{1,10} \ A_{1,11}$
$A_{2,0} \ A_{2,1} \ A_{2,2}$	$A_{2,3} \ A_{2,4} \ A_{2,5}$	$A_{2,6} \ A_{2,7} \ A_{2,8}$	$A_{2,9} \ A_{2,10} \ A_{2,11}$
$A_{3,0} \ A_{3,1} \ A_{3,2}$	$A_{3,3} \ A_{3,4} \ A_{3,5}$	$A_{3,6} \ A_{3,7} \ A_{3,8}$	$A_{3,9} \ A_{3,10} \ A_{3,11}$
$x_0 \quad x_1 \quad x_2$	$x_3 \quad x_4 \quad x_5$	$x_6 \quad x_7 \quad x_8$	$x_9 \quad x_{10} \quad x_{11}$
$A_{4,0} \ A_{4,1} \ A_{4,2}$	$A_{4,3} \ A_{4,4} \ A_{4,5}$	$A_{4,6} \ A_{4,7} \ A_{4,8}$	$A_{4,9} \ A_{4,10} \ A_{4,11}$
$A_{5,0} \ A_{5,1} \ A_{5,2}$	$A_{5,3} \ A_{5,4} \ A_{5,5}$	$A_{5,6} \ A_{5,7} \ A_{5,8}$	$A_{5,9} \ A_{5,10} \ A_{5,11}$
$A_{6,0} \ A_{6,1} \ A_{6,2}$	$A_{6,3} \ A_{6,4} \ A_{6,5}$	$A_{6,6} \ A_{6,7} \ A_{6,8}$	$A_{6,9} \ A_{6,10} \ A_{6,11}$
$A_{7,0} \ A_{7,1} \ A_{7,2}$	$A_{7,3} \ A_{7,4} \ A_{7,5}$	$A_{7,6} \ A_{7,7} \ A_{7,8}$	$A_{7,9} \ A_{7,10} \ A_{7,11}$
$x_0 \quad x_1 \quad x_2$	$x_3 \quad x_4 \quad x_5$	$x_6 \quad x_7 \quad x_8$	$x_9 \quad x_{10} \quad x_{11}$
$A_{8,0} \ A_{8,1} \ A_{8,2}$	$A_{8,3} \ A_{8,4} \ A_{8,5}$	$A_{8,6} \ A_{8,7} \ A_{8,8}$	$A_{8,9} \ A_{8,10} \ A_{8,11}$
$A_{9,0} \ A_{9,1} \ A_{9,2}$	$A_{9,3} \ A_{9,4} \ A_{9,5}$	$A_{9,6} \ A_{9,7} \ A_{9,8}$	$A_{9,9} \ A_{9,10} \ A_{9,11}$
$A_{10,0} \ A_{10,1} \ A_{10,2}$	$A_{10,3} \ A_{10,4} \ A_{10,5}$	$A_{10,6} \ A_{10,7} \ A_{10,8}$	$A_{10,9} \ A_{10,10} \ A_{10,11}$
$A_{11,0} \ A_{11,1} \ A_{11,2}$	$A_{11,3} \ A_{11,4} \ A_{11,5}$	$A_{11,6} \ A_{11,7} \ A_{11,8}$	$A_{11,9} \ A_{11,10} \ A_{11,11}$

Figure 4.2: Parallel matrix-vector multiplication: Allgather  $x$  within columns of processes.

	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$		$x_3$	$x_4$	$x_5$		$x_6$	$x_7$	$x_8$		$x_9$	$x_{10}$	$x_{11}$		
$y_0^{(0)}$	$A_{0,0}$	$A_{0,1}$	$A_{0,2}$		$y_0^{(1)}$	$A_{0,3}$	$A_{0,4}$	$A_{0,5}$		$y_0^{(2)}$	$A_{0,6}$	$A_{0,7}$	$A_{0,8}$		$y_0^{(3)}$	$A_{0,9}$	$A_{0,10} A_{0,11}$
$y_1^{(0)}$	$A_{1,0}$	$A_{1,1}$	$A_{1,2}$		$y_1^{(1)}$	$A_{1,3}$	$A_{1,4}$	$A_{1,5}$		$y_1^{(2)}$	$A_{1,6}$	$A_{1,7}$	$A_{1,8}$		$y_1^{(3)}$	$A_{1,9}$	$A_{1,10} A_{1,11}$
$y_2^{(0)}$	$A_{2,0}$	$A_{2,1}$	$A_{2,2}$		$y_2^{(1)}$	$A_{2,3}$	$A_{2,4}$	$A_{2,5}$		$y_2^{(2)}$	$A_{2,6}$	$A_{2,7}$	$A_{2,8}$		$y_2^{(3)}$	$A_{2,9}$	$A_{2,10} A_{2,11}$
$y_3^{(0)}$	$A_{3,0}$	$A_{3,1}$	$A_{3,2}$		$y_3^{(1)}$	$A_{3,3}$	$A_{3,4}$	$A_{3,5}$		$y_3^{(2)}$	$A_{3,6}$	$A_{3,7}$	$A_{3,8}$		$y_3^{(3)}$	$A_{3,9}$	$A_{3,10} A_{3,11}$
	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$		$x_3$	$x_4$	$x_5$		$x_6$	$x_7$	$x_8$		$x_9$	$x_{10}$	$x_{11}$		
$y_4^{(0)}$	$A_{4,0}$	$A_{4,1}$	$A_{4,2}$		$y_4^{(1)}$	$A_{4,3}$	$A_{4,4}$	$A_{4,5}$		$y_4^{(2)}$	$A_{4,6}$	$A_{4,7}$	$A_{4,8}$		$y_4^{(3)}$	$A_{4,9}$	$A_{4,10} A_{4,11}$
$y_5^{(0)}$	$A_{5,0}$	$A_{5,1}$	$A_{5,2}$		$y_5^{(1)}$	$A_{5,3}$	$A_{5,4}$	$A_{5,5}$		$y_5^{(2)}$	$A_{5,6}$	$A_{5,7}$	$A_{5,8}$		$y_5^{(3)}$	$A_{5,9}$	$A_{5,10} A_{5,11}$
$y_6^{(0)}$	$A_{6,0}$	$A_{6,1}$	$A_{6,2}$		$y_6^{(1)}$	$A_{6,3}$	$A_{6,4}$	$A_{6,5}$		$y_6^{(2)}$	$A_{6,6}$	$A_{6,7}$	$A_{6,8}$		$y_6^{(3)}$	$A_{6,9}$	$A_{6,10} A_{6,11}$
$y_7^{(0)}$	$A_{7,0}$	$A_{7,1}$	$A_{7,2}$		$y_7^{(1)}$	$A_{7,3}$	$A_{7,4}$	$A_{7,5}$		$y_7^{(2)}$	$A_{7,6}$	$A_{7,7}$	$A_{7,8}$		$y_7^{(3)}$	$A_{7,9}$	$A_{7,10} A_{7,11}$
	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$		$x_3$	$x_4$	$x_5$		$x_6$	$x_7$	$x_8$		$x_9$	$x_{10}$	$x_{11}$		
$y_8^{(0)}$	$A_{8,0}$	$A_{8,1}$	$A_{8,2}$		$y_8^{(1)}$	$A_{8,3}$	$A_{8,4}$	$A_{8,5}$		$y_8^{(2)}$	$A_{8,6}$	$A_{8,7}$	$A_{8,8}$		$y_8^{(3)}$	$A_{8,9}$	$A_{8,10} A_{8,11}$
$y_9^{(0)}$	$A_{9,0}$	$A_{9,1}$	$A_{9,2}$		$y_9^{(1)}$	$A_{9,3}$	$A_{9,4}$	$A_{9,5}$		$y_9^{(2)}$	$A_{9,6}$	$A_{9,7}$	$A_{9,8}$		$y_9^{(3)}$	$A_{9,9}$	$A_{9,10} A_{9,11}$
$y_{10}^{(0)}$	$A_{10,0} A_{10,1} A_{10,2}$				$y_{10}^{(1)}$	$A_{10,3} A_{10,4} A_{10,5}$				$y_{10}^{(2)}$	$A_{10,6} A_{10,7} A_{10,8}$			$y_{10}^{(3)}$	$A_{10,9} A_{10,10} A_{10,11}$		
$y_{11}^{(0)}$	$A_{11,0} A_{11,1} A_{11,2}$				$y_{11}^{(1)}$	$A_{11,3} A_{11,4} A_{11,5}$				$y_{11}^{(2)}$	$A_{11,6} A_{11,7} A_{11,8}$			$y_{11}^{(3)}$	$A_{11,9} A_{11,10} A_{11,11}$		

Figure 4.3: Parallel matrix-vector multiplication: Computation of local contributions to  $y$ .

$y_0$	$A_{0,0} A_{0,1} A_{0,2}$	$A_{0,3} A_{0,4} A_{0,5}$	$A_{0,6} A_{0,7} A_{0,8}$	$A_{0,9} A_{0,10} A_{0,11}$
$A_{1,0} A_{1,1} A_{1,2}$	$y_1$	$A_{1,3} A_{1,4} A_{1,5}$	$A_{1,6} A_{1,7} A_{1,8}$	$A_{1,9} A_{1,10} A_{1,11}$
$A_{2,0} A_{2,1} A_{2,2}$		$A_{2,3} A_{2,4} A_{2,5}$	$y_2$	$A_{2,6} A_{2,7} A_{2,8}$
$A_{3,0} A_{3,1} A_{3,2}$		$A_{3,3} A_{3,4} A_{3,5}$	$A_{3,6} A_{3,7} A_{3,8}$	$y_3$
				$A_{3,9} A_{3,10} A_{3,11}$
$y_4$	$A_{4,0} A_{4,1} A_{4,2}$	$A_{4,3} A_{4,4} A_{4,5}$	$A_{4,6} A_{4,7} A_{4,8}$	$A_{4,9} A_{4,10} A_{4,11}$
$A_{5,0} A_{5,1} A_{5,2}$	$y_5$	$A_{5,3} A_{5,4} A_{5,5}$	$A_{5,6} A_{5,7} A_{5,8}$	$A_{5,9} A_{5,10} A_{5,11}$
$A_{6,0} A_{6,1} A_{6,2}$		$A_{6,3} A_{6,4} A_{6,5}$	$y_6$	$A_{6,6} A_{6,7} A_{6,8}$
$A_{7,0} A_{7,1} A_{7,2}$		$A_{7,3} A_{7,4} A_{7,5}$	$A_{7,6} A_{7,7} A_{7,8}$	$y_7$
				$A_{7,9} A_{7,10} A_{7,11}$
$y_8$	$A_{8,0} A_{8,1} A_{8,2}$	$A_{8,3} A_{8,4} A_{8,5}$	$A_{8,6} A_{8,7} A_{8,8}$	$A_{8,9} A_{8,10} A_{8,11}$
$A_{9,0} A_{9,1} A_{9,2}$	$y_9$	$A_{9,3} A_{9,4} A_{9,5}$	$A_{9,6} A_{9,7} A_{9,8}$	$A_{9,9} A_{9,10} A_{9,11}$
$A_{10,0} A_{10,1} A_{10,2}$		$A_{10,3} A_{10,4} A_{10,5}$	$y_{10}$	$A_{10,6} A_{10,7} A_{10,8}$
$A_{11,0} A_{11,1} A_{11,2}$		$A_{11,3} A_{11,4} A_{11,5}$		$A_{11,6} A_{11,7} A_{11,8}$
				$y_{11}$
				$A_{11,9} A_{11,10} A_{11,11}$

Figure 4.4: Parallel matrix-vector multiplication: Result after reduce-scatter within rows of processes.

- Reduce-scatter the result within rows of processes at a cost of (approximately)

$$\log_2(c)\alpha + \frac{c-1}{c} \frac{n}{r} \beta + \frac{c-1}{c} \frac{n}{r} \gamma.$$

(Figure 4.4.)

The total estimated cost of the algorithm is

$$\begin{aligned} T_{r \times c}(n) &= \log_2(r)\alpha + \frac{r-1}{r} \frac{n}{c} \beta + 2 \frac{n^2}{p} \gamma + \log_2(c)\alpha + \frac{c-1}{c} \frac{n}{r} \beta + \frac{c-1}{c} \frac{n}{r} \gamma \\ &= 2 \frac{n^2}{p} \gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + (r-1) \frac{n}{p} \beta + (c-1) \frac{n}{p} \beta + (c-1) \frac{n}{p} \gamma \\ &= 2 \frac{n^2}{p} \gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + (r+c-2) \frac{n}{p} \beta + (c-1) \frac{n}{p} \gamma. \end{aligned}$$

If we assume  $r = c = \sqrt{p}$  and we approximate  $\sqrt{p} - 1$  with  $\sqrt{p}$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} T_{\sqrt{p} \times \sqrt{p}}(n) &= 2 \frac{n^2}{p} \gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + 2(\sqrt{p}-1) \frac{n}{p} \beta + (\sqrt{p}-1) \frac{n}{p} \gamma \\ &\approx 2 \frac{n^2}{p} \gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + 2 \frac{n}{\sqrt{p}} \beta + \frac{n}{\sqrt{p}} \gamma. \end{aligned}$$

Now, let's analyze the scalability of this algorithm:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\sqrt{p} \times \sqrt{p}}(n_{\max}(p)) &= \frac{T_1(n)}{p T_{\sqrt{p} \times \sqrt{p}}(n_{\max}(p))} \\ &= \frac{2 n_{\max}(p)^2 \gamma}{2 n_{\max}(p)^2 \gamma + p \log_2(p)\alpha + 2 \sqrt{p} n_{\max}(p) \beta + \sqrt{p} n_{\max}(p) \gamma} \\ &\approx \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{2} \frac{p}{n_{\max}(p)^2} \log_2(p) \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} + \frac{\sqrt{p}}{n_{\max}(p)} \frac{\beta}{\gamma} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sqrt{p}}{n_{\max}(p)}}. \end{aligned}$$

Recalling that  $n_{\max}(p)^2 = Kp$  we find that

$$E_{\sqrt{p} \times \sqrt{p}}(n_{\max}(p)) \approx \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{K} \log_2(p) \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{K}} \frac{\beta}{\gamma} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{K}}}.$$

If we consider  $\log_2(p)$  to be constant for practical purposes, we find that  $E_{\sqrt{p} \times \sqrt{p}}(n_{\max}(p))$  is constant as  $p$  increases, and hence the algorithm is weakly scalable (for practical purposes).

Keep in mind that we are using lower bounds for the cost of allgather and reduce-scatter in our estimated cost. A lot could depend on how efficiently the collective communications are implemented in practice.

**Homework 4.2.6.2** Consider how to compute  $x = A^T y$  with a partitioned matrix  $A$  and partitioned vectors  $x$  and  $y$ :

$$\begin{aligned} x_0 &= A_{0,0}^T y_0 + A_{1,0}^T y_1 + \cdots + A_{M-1,0}^T y_{M-1} \\ x_1 &= A_{0,1}^T y_0 + A_{1,1}^T y_1 + \cdots + A_{M-1,1}^T y_{M-1} \\ &\vdots && \vdots && \vdots && \vdots \\ x_{N-1} &= A_{0,N-1}^T y_0 + A_{1,N-1}^T y_1 + \cdots + A_{M-1,N-1}^T y_{M-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.4)$$

Assuming the matrix and vectors are distributed as illustrated in Figure 4.1, propose a parallel algorithm for computing  $y = A^T x$ .

[SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 4.2.6.3** Assuming the matrix and vectors are distributed as illustrated in Figure 4.1, propose a parallel algorithm for computing  $y = Ax$ .

[SEE ANSWER](#)

## 4.3 Parallel Rank-1 Update

### 4.3.1 Notation

Suppose  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , and  $y \in \mathbb{R}^m$ , where

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{0,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,n-1} \\ \alpha_{1,0} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{1,n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \alpha_{m-1,0} & \alpha_{m-1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{m-1,n-1} \end{pmatrix}, x = \begin{pmatrix} \chi_0 \\ \chi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \chi_{n-1} \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } y = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_0 \\ \psi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{m-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Recalling that  $A+ := yx^T$  (rank-1 update) is computed as

$\alpha_{0,0}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_0 \chi_0$	$\alpha_{0,1}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_0 \chi_1$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{0,n-1}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_0 \chi_{n-1}$
$\alpha_{1,0}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_1 \chi_0$	$\alpha_{1,1}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_1 \chi_1$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{1,n-1}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_1 \chi_{n-1}$
$\vdots$			$\vdots$					$\vdots$	
$\alpha_{m-1,0}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_{m-1} \chi_0$	$\alpha_{m-1,1}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_{m-1} \chi_1$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{0,n-1}$	$+ :=$	$\psi_{m-1} \chi_{n-1}$

we notice that element  $\alpha_{i,j}$  is updated by multiplying  $\psi_j$  and  $\chi_i$ . Thus we can, again, summarize the interactions of the elements of  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $A$  by

	$\chi_0$	$\chi_1$	$\cdots$	$\chi_{n-1}$
$\Psi_0$	$\alpha_{0,0}$	$\alpha_{0,1}$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{0,n-1}$
$\Psi_1$	$\alpha_{1,0}$	$\alpha_{1,1}$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{1,n-1}$
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\ddots$	$\vdots$
$\Psi_{m-1}$	$\alpha_{m-1,0}$	$\alpha_{m-1,1}$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_{m-1,n-1}$

(4.5)

If we partition

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{0,0} & A_{0,1} & \cdots & A_{0,N-1} \\ A_{1,0} & A_{1,1} & \cdots & A_{1,N-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{M-1,0} & A_{M-1,1} & \cdots & A_{M-1,N-1} \end{pmatrix}, x = \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_{M-1} \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } y = \begin{pmatrix} y_0 \\ y_1 \\ \vdots \\ y_{M-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $A_{i,j}$  is  $m_i \times n_j$ ,  $x_j$  has size  $n_j$ , and  $y_i$  has size  $m_i$ , then

$A_{0,0}$	$+ :=$	$y_0 x_0^T$	$A_{0,1}$	$+ :=$	$y_0 x_1^T$	$\cdots$	$A_{0,N-1}$	$+ :=$	$y_0 x_{N-1}^T$
$A_{1,0}$	$+ :=$	$y_1 x_0^T$	$A_{1,1}$	$+ :=$	$y_1 x_1^T$	$\cdots$	$A_{1,N-1}$	$+ :=$	$y_1 x_{N-1}^T$
$\vdots$			$\vdots$					$\vdots$	
$A_{M-1,0}$	$+ :=$	$y_{M-1} x_0^T$	$A_{M-1,1}$	$+ :=$	$y_{M-1} x_1^T$	$\cdots$	$A_{0,N-1}$	$+ :=$	$y_{M-1} x_{N-1}^T$

### 4.3.2 A weakly scalable algorithm

Examining Figure 4.5, the key insight now is that we can organize the update

$A_{4I,3J}$	$A_{4I,3J+1}$	$A_{4I,3J+2}$
$A_{I+1,3J}$	$A_{4I+1,3J+2}$	$A_{4I+1,3J+2}$
$A_{4I+2,3J}$	$A_{4I+2,3J+3}$	$A_{4I+2,3J+2}$
$A_{4I+3,3J}$	$A_{4I+3,3J+3}$	$A_{4I+3,3J+2}$

with

$A_{4I,3J} + y_{4I} x_{3J}^T$	$A_{4I,3J+1} + y_{4I} x_{3J+1}^T$	$A_{4I,3J+2} + y_{4I} x_{3J+1}^T$
$A_{I+1,3J} + y_{4I+1} x_{3J}^T$	$A_{4I+1,3J+2} + y_{4I+1} x_{3J+1}^T$	$A_{4I+1,3J+2} + y_{4I+1} x_{3J+2}^T$
$A_{4I+2,3J} + y_{4I+2} x_{3J}^T$	$A_{4I+2,3J+3} + y_{4I+2} x_{3J+1}^T$	$A_{4I+2,3J+2} + y_{4I+2} x_{3J+2}^T$
$A_{4I+3,3J} + y_{4I+3} x_{3J}^T$	$A_{4I+3,3J+3} + y_{4I+3} x_{3J+1}^T$	$A_{4I+3,3J+2} + y_{4I+3} x_{3J+2}^T$

as

$$\left( \begin{array}{c|c|c} A_{4I,3J} & A_{4I,3J+1} & A_{4I,3J+2} \\ \hline A_{I+1,3J} & A_{4I+1,3J+2} & A_{4I+1,3J+2} \\ \hline A_{4I+2,3J} & A_{4I+2,3J+3} & A_{4I+2,3J+2} \\ \hline A_{4I+3,3J} & A_{4I+3,3J+3} & A_{4I+3,3J+2} \end{array} \right) + \left( \begin{array}{c} y_{4I} \\ y_{4I+1} \\ y_{4I+2} \\ y_{4I+3} \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{c} x_{3J} \\ x_{3J+1} \\ x_{3J+2} \end{array} \right)^T.$$

These insights allow us to illustrate an algorithm in Figures 4.5-4.7:

- Initially the data is again distributed as illustrated in Figure 4.5, just as at the start of the two dimensional matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.
- Allgather subvectors  $x_j$  within columns of processes at a cost of (approximately)

$$\log_2(r)\alpha + \frac{r-1}{r}\frac{n}{c}\beta.$$

(Figure 4.6.)

- Allgather subvectors  $y_i$  within rows of processes at a cost of (approximately)

$$\log_2(c)\alpha + \frac{c-1}{c}\frac{n}{r}\beta.$$

(Figure 4.7.)

- Perform the local rank-1 update at a cost of (approximately)

$$2\frac{n^2}{p}\gamma.$$

The total estimated cost of the algorithm is

$$\begin{aligned} T_{r \times c}(n) &= \log_2(r)\alpha + \frac{r-1}{r}\frac{n}{c}\beta + 2\frac{n^2}{p}\gamma + \log_2(c)\alpha + \frac{c-1}{c}\frac{n}{r}\beta + \frac{c-1}{c}\frac{n}{r}\gamma \\ &= 2\frac{n^2}{p}\gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + (r-1)\frac{n}{p}\beta + (c-1)\frac{n}{p}\beta + (c-1)\frac{n}{p}\gamma \\ &= 2\frac{n^2}{p}\gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + (r+c-2)\frac{n}{p}\beta + (c-1)\frac{n}{p}\gamma. \end{aligned}$$

If we assume  $r = c = \sqrt{p}$  and we approximate  $\sqrt{p} - 1$  with  $\sqrt{p}$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} T_{\sqrt{p} \times \sqrt{p}}(n) &= 2\frac{n^2}{p}\gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + 2(\sqrt{p}-1)\frac{n}{p}\beta + (\sqrt{p}-1)\frac{n}{p}\gamma \\ &\approx 2\frac{n^2}{p}\gamma + \log_2(p)\alpha + 2\frac{n}{\sqrt{p}}\beta + \frac{n}{\sqrt{p}}\gamma. \end{aligned}$$

	$x_0$	$x_3$	$x_6$	$x_9$
$y_0$	$C_{0,0} \ C_{0,1} \ C_{0,2}$	$C_{0,3} \ C_{0,4} \ C_{0,5}$	$C_{0,6} \ C_{0,7} \ C_{0,8}$	$C_{0,9} \ C_{0,10} \ C_{0,11}$
	$x_1$	$x_4$	$x_7$	$x_{10}$
$y_4$	$C_{4,0} \ C_{4,1} \ C_{4,2}$	$C_{4,3} \ C_{4,4} \ C_{4,5}$	$C_{4,6} \ C_{4,7} \ C_{4,8}$	$C_{4,9} \ C_{4,10} \ C_{4,11}$
	$C_{5,0} \ C_{5,1} \ C_{5,2}$	$C_{5,3} \ C_{5,4} \ C_{5,5}$	$C_{5,6} \ C_{5,7} \ C_{5,8}$	$C_{5,9} \ C_{5,10} \ C_{5,11}$
$y_5$	$C_{6,0} \ C_{6,1} \ C_{6,2}$	$C_{6,3} \ C_{6,4} \ C_{6,5}$	$C_{6,6} \ C_{6,7} \ C_{6,8}$	$C_{6,9} \ C_{6,10} \ C_{6,11}$
	$C_{7,0} \ C_{7,1} \ C_{7,2}$	$C_{7,3} \ C_{7,4} \ C_{7,5}$	$C_{7,6} \ C_{7,7} \ C_{7,8}$	$C_{7,9} \ C_{7,10} \ C_{7,11}$
$y_8$	$x_2$	$x_5$	$x_8$	$x_{11}$
	$C_{8,0} \ C_{8,1} \ C_{8,2}$	$C_{8,3} \ C_{8,4} \ C_{8,5}$	$C_{8,6} \ C_{8,7} \ C_{8,8}$	$C_{8,9} \ C_{8,10} \ C_{8,11}$
$y_9$	$C_{9,0} \ C_{9,1} \ C_{9,2}$	$C_{9,3} \ C_{9,4} \ C_{9,5}$	$C_{9,6} \ C_{9,7} \ C_{9,8}$	$C_{9,9} \ C_{9,10} \ C_{9,11}$
	$C_{10,0} \ C_{10,1} \ C_{10,2}$	$C_{10,3} \ C_{10,4} \ C_{10,5}$	$C_{10,6} \ C_{10,7} \ C_{10,8}$	$C_{10,9} \ C_{10,10} \ C_{10,11}$
$y_{10}$	$C_{11,0} \ C_{11,1} \ C_{11,2}$	$C_{11,3} \ C_{11,4} \ C_{11,5}$	$C_{11,6} \ C_{11,7} \ C_{11,8}$	$C_{11,9} \ C_{11,10} \ C_{11,11}$

Figure 4.5: Parallel rank-1 update: Initial distribution of matrix and vectors before  $C := yx^T + C$ .

	$x_0 \ x_1 \ x_2$	$x_3 \ x_4 \ x_5$	$x_6 \ x_7 \ x_8$	$x_9 \ x_{10} \ x_{11}$
$y_0$	$C_{0,0} \ C_{0,1} \ C_{0,2}$	$C_{0,3} \ C_{0,4} \ C_{0,5}$	$C_{0,6} \ C_{0,7} \ C_{0,8}$	$C_{0,9} \ C_{0,10} \ C_{0,11}$
	$x_0 \ x_1 \ x_2$	$x_3 \ x_4 \ x_5$	$x_6 \ x_7 \ x_8$	$x_9 \ x_{10} \ x_{11}$
$y_4$	$C_{4,0} \ C_{4,1} \ C_{4,2}$	$C_{4,3} \ C_{4,4} \ C_{4,5}$	$C_{4,6} \ C_{4,7} \ C_{4,8}$	$C_{4,9} \ C_{4,10} \ C_{4,11}$
	$C_{5,0} \ C_{5,1} \ C_{5,2}$	$C_{5,3} \ C_{5,4} \ C_{5,5}$	$C_{5,6} \ C_{5,7} \ C_{5,8}$	$C_{5,9} \ C_{5,10} \ C_{5,11}$
$y_5$	$C_{6,0} \ C_{6,1} \ C_{6,2}$	$C_{6,3} \ C_{6,4} \ C_{6,5}$	$C_{6,6} \ C_{6,7} \ C_{6,8}$	$C_{6,9} \ C_{6,10} \ C_{6,11}$
	$C_{7,0} \ C_{7,1} \ C_{7,2}$	$C_{7,3} \ C_{7,4} \ C_{7,5}$	$C_{7,6} \ C_{7,7} \ C_{7,8}$	$C_{7,9} \ C_{7,10} \ C_{7,11}$
$y_8$	$x_0 \ x_1 \ x_2$	$x_3 \ x_4 \ x_5$	$x_6 \ x_7 \ x_8$	$x_9 \ x_{10} \ x_{11}$
	$C_{8,0} \ C_{8,1} \ C_{8,2}$	$C_{8,3} \ C_{8,4} \ C_{8,5}$	$C_{8,6} \ C_{8,7} \ C_{8,8}$	$C_{8,9} \ C_{8,10} \ C_{8,11}$
$y_9$	$C_{9,0} \ C_{9,1} \ C_{9,2}$	$C_{9,3} \ C_{9,4} \ C_{9,5}$	$C_{9,6} \ C_{9,7} \ C_{9,8}$	$C_{9,9} \ C_{9,10} \ C_{9,11}$
	$C_{10,0} \ C_{10,1} \ C_{10,2}$	$C_{10,3} \ C_{10,4} \ C_{10,5}$	$C_{10,6} \ C_{10,7} \ C_{10,8}$	$C_{10,9} \ C_{10,10} \ C_{10,11}$
$y_{10}$	$C_{11,0} \ C_{11,1} \ C_{11,2}$	$C_{11,3} \ C_{11,4} \ C_{11,5}$	$C_{11,6} \ C_{11,7} \ C_{11,8}$	$C_{11,9} \ C_{11,10} \ C_{11,11}$

Figure 4.6: Parallel rank-1 update: Allgather  $x$  within columns of processes.

$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$	$x_4$	$x_5$	$x_6$	$x_7$	$x_8$	$x_9$	$x_{10}$	$x_{11}$
$y_0$	$C_{0,0}$	$C_{0,1}$	$C_{0,2}$	$y_0$	$C_{0,3}$	$C_{0,4}$	$C_{0,5}$	$y_0$	$C_{0,6}$	$C_{0,7}$	$C_{0,8}$
$y_1$	$C_{1,0}$	$C_{1,1}$	$C_{1,2}$	$y_1$	$C_{1,3}$	$C_{1,4}$	$C_{1,5}$	$y_1$	$C_{1,6}$	$C_{1,7}$	$C_{1,8}$
$y_2$	$C_{2,0}$	$C_{2,1}$	$C_{2,2}$	$y_2$	$C_{2,3}$	$C_{2,4}$	$C_{2,5}$	$y_2$	$C_{2,6}$	$C_{2,7}$	$C_{2,8}$
$y_3$	$C_{3,0}$	$C_{3,1}$	$C_{3,2}$	$y_3$	$C_{3,3}$	$C_{3,4}$	$C_{3,5}$	$y_3$	$C_{3,6}$	$C_{3,7}$	$C_{3,8}$
$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$	$x_4$	$x_5$	$x_6$	$x_7$	$x_8$	$x_9$	$x_{10}$	$x_{11}$
$y_4$	$C_{4,0}$	$C_{4,1}$	$C_{4,2}$	$y_4$	$C_{4,3}$	$C_{4,4}$	$C_{4,5}$	$y_4$	$C_{4,6}$	$C_{4,7}$	$C_{4,8}$
$y_5$	$C_{5,0}$	$C_{5,1}$	$C_{5,2}$	$y_5$	$C_{5,3}$	$C_{5,4}$	$C_{5,5}$	$y_5$	$C_{5,6}$	$C_{5,7}$	$C_{5,8}$
$y_6$	$C_{6,0}$	$C_{6,1}$	$C_{6,2}$	$y_6$	$C_{6,3}$	$C_{6,4}$	$C_{6,5}$	$y_6$	$C_{6,6}$	$C_{6,7}$	$C_{6,8}$
$y_7$	$C_{7,0}$	$C_{7,1}$	$C_{7,2}$	$y_7$	$C_{7,3}$	$C_{7,4}$	$C_{7,5}$	$y_7$	$C_{7,6}$	$C_{7,7}$	$C_{7,8}$
$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$	$x_4$	$x_5$	$x_6$	$x_7$	$x_8$	$x_9$	$x_{10}$	$x_{11}$
$y_8$	$C_{8,0}$	$C_{8,1}$	$C_{8,2}$	$y_8$	$C_{8,3}$	$C_{8,4}$	$C_{8,5}$	$y_8$	$C_{8,6}$	$C_{8,7}$	$C_{8,8}$
$y_9$	$C_{9,0}$	$C_{9,1}$	$C_{9,2}$	$y_9$	$C_{9,3}$	$C_{9,4}$	$C_{9,5}$	$y_9$	$C_{9,6}$	$C_{9,7}$	$C_{9,8}$
$y_{10}$	$C_{10,0}$	$C_{10,1}$	$C_{10,2}$	$y_{10}$	$C_{10,3}$	$C_{10,4}$	$C_{10,5}$	$y_{10}$	$C_{10,6}$	$C_{10,7}$	$C_{10,8}$
$y_{11}$	$C_{11,0}$	$C_{11,1}$	$C_{11,2}$	$y_{11}$	$C_{11,3}$	$C_{11,4}$	$C_{11,5}$	$y_{11}$	$C_{11,6}$	$C_{11,7}$	$C_{11,8}$

Figure 4.7: Parallel rank-1 update: Allgather  $y$  within rows of processes and perform local rank-1 update.

**Homework 4.3.2.4** Analyze the scalability of the discussed parallel algorithm for computing a rank-1 update, for the case where  $r \times c = \sqrt{p} \times \sqrt{p}$ .

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 4.3.2.5** Assuming the matrix and vectors are distributed as illustrated in Figure 4.5, propose a parallel algorithm for computing  $A = xy^T + A$ .

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

## 4.4 Toward Parallel Matrix-Matrix Multiplication

### 4.4.1 Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates, Part 1

Recall that if we wish to compute  $C := AB + C$ , where  $C$  is  $m \times n$ ,  $A$  is  $m \times k$ , and  $B$  is  $k \times n$ , we can partition matrix  $A$  by columns and matrix  $B$  by rows so that

$$C := AB + C$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} a_0 & a_1 & \cdots & a_{k-1} \end{array} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\tilde{b}_0^T}{\tilde{b}_1^T} \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\tilde{b}_{k-1}^T}{\tilde{b}_k^T} \end{pmatrix} + C \\
 &= a_0 \tilde{b}_0^T + a_1 \tilde{b}_1^T + \cdots + a_{k-1} \tilde{b}_{k-1}^T + C.
 \end{aligned}$$

It would seem like we can create a parallel matrix-matrix multiplication algorithm by simply putting a loop around the parallel rank-1 update algorithm that we developed in Unit 4.3.2. The problem is that the parallel rank-1 update for computing  $A := yx^T + A$  requires the vector  $y$  to be distributed to the mesh of processes with a row-major distribution and the vector  $x$  with a column-major distribution. Instead, a typical column  $a_p$  is distributed, well, as a column of a matrix and a typical row  $\tilde{b}_p^T$  is distributed as a row of a matrix.

#### 4.4.2 Of vectors, rows, and columns

How does one redistribute columns and rows to and from the vector distributions of  $x$  and  $y$ ?

**Column to vector to column.** Consider a typical column of matrix  $A$ ,  $a_p$ , as illustrated in Figure 4.8. What we notice is:

- Redistributing this column as vector  $y$  requires simultaneous scatters within rows of processes.
- Redistributing vector  $y$  to this column requires simultaneous gathers within rows of processes.

**Row to vector to row.** Consider a typical row of matrix  $A$ ,  $\tilde{b}_p^T$ , as illustrated in Figure 4.9. What we notice is:

- Redistributing this row as vector  $x$  requires simultaneous scatters within columns of processes.
- Redistributing vector  $x$  to this row requires simultaneous gathers within rows of processes.

**Vector to vector.** As we have encountered before in some of the homeworks: redistributing  $x$  to  $y$  or  $y$  to  $x$  merely requires simultaneous sends between the pairs of processes that “own”  $x_i$  and  $y_i$  (provided the vectors are of equal size and partitioned conformally). This is a very simple case of permutation among processes.

$x_0$ $y_0$	$x_3$ $y_1$ $a_{0,p}$ $a_{1,p}$ $a_{2,p}$ $a_{3,p}$	$x_6$ $y_2$	$x_9$ $y_3$
$x_1$ $y_4$	$x_4$ $y_5$ $a_{4,p}$ $a_{5,p}$ $a_{6,p}$ $a_{7,p}$	$x_7$ $y_6$	$x_{10}$ $y_7$
$x_2$ $y_8$	$x_5$ $y_9$ $a_{8,p}$ $a_{9,p}$ $a_{10,p}$ $a_{11,p}$	$x_8$ $y_{10}$	$x_{11}$ $y_{11}$

Figure 4.8: Distribution of a typical column in matrix  $A$ ,  $a_p$ .

$x_0$ $y_0$	$x_3$ $y_1$	$x_6$ $y_2$	$x_9$ $y_3$
$x_1$ $y_4$ $\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T$ $\tilde{b}_{p,1}^T$ $\tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$x_4$ $y_5$ $\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T$ $\tilde{b}_{p,4}^T$ $\tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$	$x_7$ $y_6$ $\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T$ $\tilde{b}_{p,7}^T$ $\tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$x_{10}$ $y_7$ $\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T$ $\tilde{b}_{p,10}^T$ $\tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$
$x_2$ $y_8$	$x_5$ $y_9$	$x_8$ $y_{10}$	$x_{11}$ $y_{11}$

Figure 4.9: Distribution of a typical row in matrix  $A$ ,  $\tilde{b}_p^T$ .

**Column to row to column.** What we have uncovered is the fact that the vector distributions are intermediate distributions to and from which one can easily redistribute columns and rows of a matrix. Indeed, a column can be copied into a row by first scattering within rows of processes, leaving it distributed like  $y$ , followed by a redistribution from  $y$  to  $x$ , and finally a gather within columns of processes.

#### 4.4.3 Matrix-matrix multiplication via rank-1 updates, Part 2

With the insights from the last two units, we are ready to propose a parallel matrix-matrix multiplication algorithm based on

$$\begin{aligned} C &:= AB + C \\ &= \left( a_0 \mid a_1 \mid \cdots \mid a_{k-1} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{b}_0^T \\ \tilde{b}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{b}_{k-1}^T \end{pmatrix} + C \\ &= a_0 \tilde{b}_0^T + a_1 \tilde{b}_1^T + \cdots + a_{k-1} \tilde{b}_{k-1}^T + C. \end{aligned}$$

- **for**  $p = 0, \dots, k-1$ 
  - Redistribute  $\tilde{b}_p^T$  like  $x$ . (Scatter within columns of processes.)
  - Redistribute  $a_p$  like  $y$ . (Scatter within rows of processes.)
  - Allgather  $x$  within columns of processes.
  - Allgather  $y$  within rows of processes.
  - Update the local part of  $C$  with the local parts of the duplicated vectors  $x$  and  $y$ .

Let's play with this a bit. We can rearrange the steps as

- **for**  $p = 0, \dots, k-1$ 
  - Redistribute  $\tilde{b}_p^T$  like  $x$ . (Scatter within columns of processes).
  - Allgather  $x$  within columns of processes.
  - Redistribute  $a_p$  like  $y$ . (Scatter within rows of processes.)
  - Allgather  $y$  within rows of processes.
  - Update the local part of  $C$  with the local parts of the duplicated vectors  $x$  and  $y$ .

Next, we recognize that a scatter within columns of processes followed by an allgather within columns of processes is the same as a broadcast within columns of processes. Similarly, a scatter within rows of processes followed by an allgather within rows of processes is the same as a broadcast within rows of processes. This leaves us with

- **for**  $p = 0, \dots, k - 1$ 
  - Broadcast  $\tilde{b}_p^T$  within columns of processes.  
 (Figure 4.10 to 4.11.)
  - Broadcast  $a_p$  within rows of processes.  
 (Figure 4.12 to 4.13.)
  - Update the local part of  $C$  with the local parts of the duplicated  $\tilde{b}_p^T$  and  $a_p$ .  
 (Figure 4.14.)

**Homework 4.4.3.6** Analyze the cost and scalability of the described parallel matrix-matrix multiplication algorithm, assuming a  $\sqrt{p} \times \sqrt{p}$  process mesh and using  $\log_2(p)\alpha + n\beta$  as the cost of a broadcast of  $n$  items among  $p$  processes.

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

The reason why we like to break down the communications and computations to include the redistributions into those that involve vectors  $x$  and  $y$  becomes clear when one considers the following exercises:

**Homework 4.4.3.7** Consider the computation of  $C := AB^T + C$  via rank-1 updates:

$$\begin{aligned}
 C &:= AB^T + C \\
 &= \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} a_0 & a_1 & \cdots & a_{k-1} \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} b_0 & b_1 & \cdots & b_{k-1} \end{array} \right)^T + C \\
 &= \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} a_0 & a_1 & \cdots & a_{k-1} \end{array} \right) \begin{pmatrix} b_0^T \\ b_1^T \\ \vdots \\ b_{k-1}^T \end{pmatrix} + C \\
 &= a_0 b_0^T + a_1 b_1^T + \cdots + a_{k-1} b_{k-1}^T + C.
 \end{aligned}$$

Propose a parallel algorithm that casts the computation in terms of local rank-1 updates.

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 4.4.3.8** Consider the computation of  $C := A^T B + C$ . Propose a parallel algorithm that casts the computation in terms of local rank-1 updates.

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

**Homework 4.4.3.9** Consider the computation of  $C := A^T B + C$ . Propose a parallel algorithm that casts the computation in terms of local rank-1 updates.

 [SEE ANSWER](#)

$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$

Figure 4.10: Broadcast  $\tilde{b}_p^T$  within rows of processors (before).

$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$

Figure 4.11: Broadcast  $\tilde{b}_p^T$  within rows of processors (after).

$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{0,p}$ $a_{1,p}$ $a_{2,p}$ $a_{3,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{4,p}$ $a_{5,p}$ $a_{6,p}$ $a_{7,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_9^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$
$\tilde{b}_0^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{8,p}$ $a_{9,p}$ $a_{10,p}$ $a_{11,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$

Figure 4.12: Broadcast  $a_p$  within rows of processors (before).

$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{0,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{0,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{0,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{0,p}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{4,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{4,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{4,p}$	$\tilde{b}_9^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{4,p}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{5,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{5,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{5,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{5,p}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{6,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{6,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{6,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{6,p}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{7,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{7,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{7,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{7,p}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{8,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{8,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{8,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{8,p}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{9,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{9,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{9,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{9,p}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{10,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{10,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{10,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{10,p}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T \tilde{b}_{p,1}^T \tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$ $a_{11,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T \tilde{b}_{p,4}^T \tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$ $a_{11,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T \tilde{b}_{p,7}^T \tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$ $a_{11,p}$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T \tilde{b}_{p,10}^T \tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$ $a_{11,p}$

Figure 4.13: Broadcast  $a_p$  within rows of processors (after).

$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,1}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,4}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,7}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,10}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$
$a_{0,p}$	$C_{0,0}$	$C_{0,1}$	$C_{0,2}$	$a_{0,p}$	$C_{0,3}$	$C_{0,4}$	$C_{0,5}$	$a_{0,p}$	$C_{0,6}$	$C_{0,7}$	$C_{0,8}$
$a_{1,p}$	$C_{1,0}$	$C_{1,1}$	$C_{1,2}$	$a_{1,p}$	$C_{1,3}$	$C_{1,4}$	$C_{1,5}$	$a_{1,p}$	$C_{1,6}$	$C_{1,7}$	$C_{1,8}$
$a_{2,p}$	$C_{2,0}$	$C_{2,1}$	$C_{2,2}$	$a_{2,p}$	$C_{2,3}$	$C_{2,4}$	$C_{2,5}$	$a_{2,p}$	$C_{2,6}$	$C_{2,7}$	$C_{2,8}$
$a_{3,p}$	$C_{3,0}$	$C_{3,1}$	$C_{3,2}$	$a_{3,p}$	$C_{3,3}$	$C_{3,4}$	$C_{3,5}$	$a_{3,p}$	$C_{3,6}$	$C_{3,7}$	$C_{3,8}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,1}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,4}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,7}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_9^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,10}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$
$a_{4,p}$	$C_{4,0}$	$C_{4,1}$	$C_{4,2}$	$a_{4,p}$	$C_{4,3}$	$C_{4,4}$	$C_{4,5}$	$a_{4,p}$	$C_{4,6}$	$C_{4,7}$	$C_{4,8}$
$a_{5,p}$	$C_{5,0}$	$C_{5,1}$	$C_{5,2}$	$a_{5,p}$	$C_{5,3}$	$C_{5,4}$	$C_{5,5}$	$a_{5,p}$	$C_{5,6}$	$C_{5,7}$	$C_{5,8}$
$a_{6,p}$	$C_{6,0}$	$C_{6,1}$	$C_{6,2}$	$a_{6,p}$	$C_{6,3}$	$C_{6,4}$	$C_{6,5}$	$a_{6,p}$	$C_{6,6}$	$C_{6,7}$	$C_{6,8}$
$a_{7,p}$	$C_{7,0}$	$C_{7,1}$	$C_{7,2}$	$a_{7,p}$	$C_{7,3}$	$C_{7,4}$	$C_{7,5}$	$a_{7,p}$	$C_{7,6}$	$C_{7,7}$	$C_{7,8}$
$\tilde{b}_{p,0}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,1}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,2}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,3}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,4}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,5}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,6}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,7}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,8}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,9}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,10}^T$	$\tilde{b}_{p,11}^T$
$a_{8,p}$	$C_{8,0}$	$C_{8,1}$	$C_{8,2}$	$a_{8,p}$	$C_{8,3}$	$C_{8,4}$	$C_{8,5}$	$a_{8,p}$	$C_{8,6}$	$C_{8,7}$	$C_{8,8}$
$a_{9,p}$	$C_{9,0}$	$C_{9,1}$	$C_{9,2}$	$a_{9,p}$	$C_{9,3}$	$C_{9,4}$	$C_{9,5}$	$a_{9,p}$	$C_{9,6}$	$C_{9,7}$	$C_{9,8}$
$a_{10,p}$	$C_{10,0}$	$C_{10,1}$	$C_{10,2}$	$a_{10,p}$	$C_{10,3}$	$C_{10,4}$	$C_{10,5}$	$a_{10,p}$	$C_{10,6}$	$C_{10,7}$	$C_{10,8}$
$a_{11,p}$	$C_{11,0}$	$C_{11,1}$	$C_{11,2}$	$a_{11,p}$	$C_{11,3}$	$C_{11,4}$	$C_{11,5}$	$a_{11,p}$	$C_{11,6}$	$C_{11,7}$	$C_{11,8}$

Figure 4.14: Local update.

#### 4.4.4 Matrix-matrix multiplication via matrix-vector multiplications

Recall that, alternatively, if we wish to compute  $C := AB + C$ , where  $C$  is  $m \times n$ ,  $A$  is  $m \times k$ , and  $B$  is  $k \times n$ , we can partition matrices  $C$  and  $B$  by columns so that

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} c_0 & c_1 & \cdots & c_{n-1} \end{array} \right) &= A \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} b_0 & b_1 & \cdots & b_{n-1} \end{array} \right) + \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} c_0 & c_1 & \cdots & c_{n-1} \end{array} \right) \\ &= \left( \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} Ab_0 + c_0 & Ab_1 + c_1 & \cdots & Ab_{n-1} + c_{n-1} \end{array} \right). \end{aligned}$$

We can now implement a parallel matrix-matrix multiplication algorithm by putting a loop around the parallel matrix-vector update algorithm that we developed in Unit ???. Again, the problem is that parallel matrix-vector multiply requires the vectors  $x$  and  $y$  to be distributed differently than columns of  $C$  and  $B$  are. But, by now the solution should be obvious to you.

**Homework 4.4.4.10** Consider the computation of  $C := AB + C$ . Propose a parallel algorithm that casts the computation in terms of local matrix-vector multiplications.

 SEE ANSWER

**Homework 4.4.4.11** Consider the computation of  $C := AB^T + C$ . Propose a parallel algorithm that casts the computation in terms of local matrix-vector multiplications.

 SEE ANSWER

#### 4.4.5 High-Performance Parallel Matrix-Matrix Multiplication

While the algorithms discussed in the last units are *weakly scalable*, they are *not* high performing. The reason is simple: the local computations are cast in terms of a rank-1 update (for the algorithms in Unit 4.4.3) or matrix-vector multiplications (for the algorithms in Unit 4.4.4). These operations perform  $O(1)$  computations for each memory operation, and hence will not attain high performance for the single process computations.

The solution is quite simple. Let us start by focusing on the algorithm that casts  $C := AB + C$  in terms of rank-1 updates. If we partition  $A$  into blocks of columns and  $B$  into blocks of rows, of appropriate size, then we get that

$$\begin{aligned} C &:= AB + C \\ &= \left( A_0 \mid A_1 \mid \cdots \mid A_{K-1} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \overline{\tilde{B}_0} \\ \overline{\tilde{B}_1} \\ \vdots \\ \overline{\tilde{B}_{K-1}} \end{pmatrix} + C \\ &= A_0 \tilde{B}_0 + A_1 \tilde{B}_1 + \cdots + A_{K-1} \tilde{B}_{K-1} + C. \end{aligned}$$

What we notice is that instead of broadcasting the appropriate parts of  $a_p$  within rows of processes and  $\tilde{b}_p^T$  within columns of processes, we instead broadcast the appropriate parts of  $A_p$  within rows of processes and  $\tilde{B}_p$  within columns of processes. The width of  $A_p$  (and corresponding height of  $\tilde{B}_p$ ) is dictated by the block size  $k_c$  encountered in Week ???. The important point is that this casts the local computation in terms of a matrix-matrix multiplication.

Similarly, we can take the algorithm that casts the computation in terms of matrix-vector multiplications and cast it in terms of a matrix times a panel of vectors instead:

$$\begin{aligned} \left( C_0 \mid C_1 \mid \cdots \mid C_{N-1} \right) &= A \left( B_0 \mid B_1 \mid \cdots \mid B_{N-1} \right) + \left( C_0 \mid C_1 \mid \cdots \mid C_{N-1} \right) \\ &= \left( AB_0 + C_0 \mid AB_1 + C_1 \mid \cdots \mid AB_{N-1} + C_{N-1} \right). \end{aligned}$$

It should be obvious how to modify the algorithms from Unit 4.4.4 appropriately. Again, the local computation now becomes a matrix-matrix multiplication.

### 4.5 Enrichment

### 4.6 Wrapup